



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE STUDENTS' SERIES

A FIRST BOOK
IN
LATIN
Prose and Verse
NEW EDITION

Educ T 918.93,853



Harvard College Library

THE GIFT OF

GINN AND COMPANY

DECEMBER 26, 1923



3 2044 097 058 366

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and titles.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

34.

35.

36.

37.

38.

39.

40.

41.

42.

43.

44.

45.

46.

47.

48.

49.

50.

51.

52.

53.

54.

55.

56.

57.

58.

59.

60.

61.

62.

63.

64.

65.

66.

67.

68.

69.

70.

71.

72.

73.

74.

75.

76.

77.

78.

79.

80.

81.

82.

83.

84.

85.

86.

87.

88.

89.

90.

91.

92.

93.

94.

95.

96.

97.

98.

99.

100.

101.

102.

103.

104.

105.

106.

107.

108.

109.

110.

111.

112.

113.

114.

115.

116.

117.

118.

119.

120.

121.

122.

123.

124.

125.

126.

127.

128.

129.

130.

131.

132.

133.

134.

135.

136.

137.

138.

139.

140.

141.

142.

143.

144.

145.

146.

147.

148.

149.

150.

151.

152.

153.

154.

155.

156.

157.

158.

159.

160.

161.

162.

163.

164.

165.

166.

167.

168.

169.

170.

171.

172.

173.

174.

175.

176.

177.

178.

179.

180.

181.

182.

183.

184.

185.

186.

187.

188.

189.

190.

191.

192.

193.

194.

195.

196.

197.

198.

199.

200.

201.

202.

203.

204.

205.

206.

207.

208.

209.

210.

211.

212.

213.

214.

215.

216.

217.

218.

219.

220.

221.

222.

223.

224.

225.

226.

227.

228.

229.

230.

231.

232.

233.

234.

235.

236.

237.

238.

239.

240.

241.

242.

243.

244.

245.

246.

247.

248.

249.

250.

251.

252.

253.

254.

255.

256.

257.

258.

259.

260.

261.

262.

263.

264.

265.

266.

267.

268.

269.

270.

271.

272.

273.

274.

275.

276.

277.

278.

279.

280.

281.

282.

283.

284.

285.

286.

287.

288.

289.

290.

291.

292.

293.

294.

295.

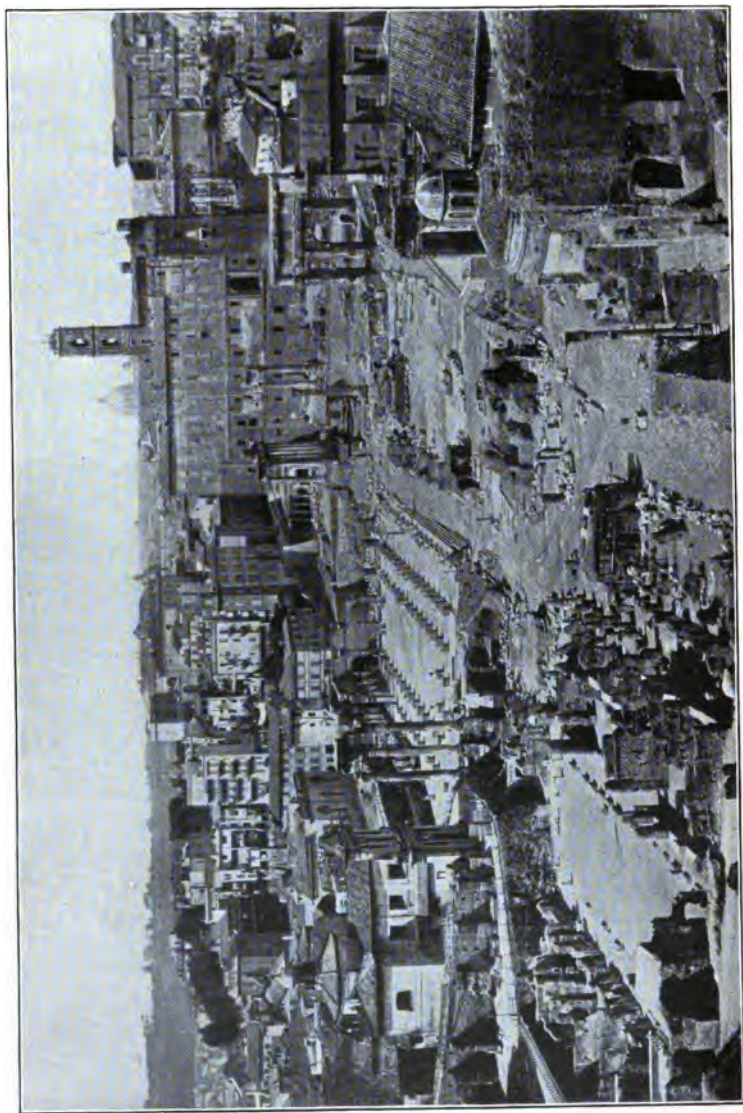
296.

297.

298.

299.

300.



ROMAN FORUM (from a recent photograph)

Students' Series of Latin Classics

FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

BY

IRVING TULLI V. M.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

OLD NOBLE TOWER, ETC.

NEW YORK: THE CENTRAL BOOK CONCERN, 1907.
CHICAGO: THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO, 1907.

no. 10000 dXXX. 1116

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.



The Students' Series of Latin Classics

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN

BY

HIRAM TUELL, A.M.,

LATE PRINCIPAL OF THE MILTON (MASS.) HIGH SCHOOL

AND

HAROLD NORTH FOWLER, PH.D.

PROFESSOR IN THE WESTERN RESERVE UNIVERSITY; FORMERLY PROFESSOR
OF LATIN IN THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολὺ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON, U.S.A.

Edna T 915.73.853

MARYARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

GIF.

ANN AND COMPANY

DEC 24, 1923

COPYRIGHT, 1893,

BY HIRAM TUELL AND HAROLD NORTH FOWLER.

Northwood Press:

**J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith
Boston, Mass., U.S.A.**

PREFACE.

THE vocabulary of this book contains about seven hundred words, exclusive of proper names.

While words not found in Cæsar¹ have been used as material for paradigms, illustrations, and sentences on familiar subjects, by far the greater part of the vocabulary has been selected from the first four books of the *Gallic War*. Indeed, nearly every word which Cæsar uses six or more times in these four books will be found here; and they form so large a proportion of the text of Cæsar that a pupil who has mastered the vocabulary of this book will find himself familiar with eighty-five per cent of the words of the *Gallic War*.

To ensure the acquisition of the vocabulary, every word when first introduced is used in at least three consecutive chapters; and the small number of words

¹ While the vocabulary was selected with special reference to Cæsar, subsequent examination shows that it is equally valuable for those who are to read Nepos, as it contains about eighty per cent of the words in the life of Themistocles, which may be taken as a fair representative of that author.

has compelled their more frequent repetition in later chapters.

The illustrative sentences—which in all cases precede the rules of syntax—contain, with few exceptions, only words already found in the exercises.

Each principle of syntax appears in at least three successive chapters when first introduced, and is afterwards frequently repeated.

The development of the verb is slow, and carefully graded with reference to the difficulty of acquirement.

The exercises on forms are designed to be easy drill-exercises, and contain no new words. They are numerous, and are capable of indefinite expansion at the will of the teacher.

The carefully graded reading lessons, beginning with Chapter XXX., contain the story of the first book of the *Galic War*, and so prepare the pupil to begin the reading of Cæsar at the second book, with a proper understanding of the previous narrative; or at the first, with such a knowledge of its contents as to remove many of its difficulties. Few words are used which have not already occurred in the exercises; and whenever new words are introduced, their translation is given in parenthesis.

The illustrations and exercises of Chapter LXI. (on indirect discourse) can be omitted without causing inconvenience in the use of the rest of the book.

The derivation and composition of words are treated more fully than is usual in books for beginners, in the hope that a simple presentation of important parts of these subjects may lighten the pupil's subsequent labors.

The selections for sight reading at the end of the book contain not only fables, but also passages adapted from Eutropius, giving a brief biography of Julius Cæsar.

It is expected that the book will prove easier than the ordinary first book, on account of its small vocabulary and careful gradation, and will contribute far more to the rapidity and pleasure of later progress in consequence of the principle which has guided the selection of the words and the more thorough mastery of their meanings.

We desire to acknowledge our indebtedness to Henry Snyder, A.M., Superintendent of the Schools of Jersey City, who made valuable contributions in the earlier stages of the work, and to Professor E. M. Pease, of Leland Stanford Junior University, editor-in-chief of this series, whose criticisms and suggestions at every stage have been very helpful.

HIRAM TUELL.

HAROLD N. FOWLER.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. Introductory Matter	1
II. First Declension.— <i>Subject and Direct Object</i> . . .	8
III. First Declension (<i>continued</i>).— <i>Genitive with Nouns</i> .	11
IV. Present Indicative of <i>Sum</i> .— <i>Agreement of Verbs</i> . .	12
V. <i>Predicate Noun and Appositive</i>	14
VI. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-us</i> .— <i>Indirect Object</i> .	16
VII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-um</i> .— Adjectives in <i>-us, -a, -um</i> .— <i>Agreement of Adjectives</i>	18
VIII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i> .— Imperfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i>	21
IX. Adjectives in <i>-er</i> .— Future Indicative of <i>Sum</i> .— <i>Dative of Possessor</i>	23
X. Third Declension: Mute Stems	26
XI. Third Declension: Mute Stems (<i>continued</i>).— First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	28
XII. Third Declension: Liquid Stems. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Active	31
XIII. Third Declension (<i>continued</i>).— First Conjugation: Future Indicative Active.— <i>Ablative of Instrument</i> . .	34
XIV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> .— First Conjugation: Perfect Indicative Active.— Perfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i> .— <i>Ablative of Manner</i>	36
XV. Third Declension: Stems in <i>-i</i> (<i>continued</i>).— First Conjugation: Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.— Pluperfect and Future-Perfect Indicative of <i>Sum</i> .— <i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i>	40
XVI. Third Declension: Mixed Stems.— <i>Ablative of Time</i> .	44
XVII. Third Declension.— Rules for Gender	47

CHAPTER	PAGE
XVIII. Adjectives of Three Terminations. — First Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Agent</i>	50
XIX. Adjectives of Two Terminations. — First Conjugation: Imperfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Cause</i>	53
XX. Adjectives of One Termination. — First Conjugation: Future Indicative Passive. — <i>Ablative of Specification</i>	56
XXI. First Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — <i>Descriptive Ablative</i>	59
XXII. Comparison of Adjectives. — Declension of Comparatives. — <i>Ablative with Comparatives</i>	62
XXIII. Comparison of Adjectives (<i>continued</i>). — <i>Partitive Genitive</i>	65
XXIV. Irregular Comparison (<i>continued</i>). — <i>Ablative of Degree of Difference</i>	68
XXV. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	71
XXVI. Fourth Declension. — Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active	73
XXVII. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — <i>Dative with Adjectives</i>	75
XXVIII. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active	77
XXIX. Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive. — Fifth Declension	79
XXX. Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive. — Nine Irregular Adjectives. — Reading Lesson	82
XXXI. Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive	85
XXXII. Third Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Cardinal Numerals. — <i>Accusative of Extent</i> . — Reading Lesson	87
XXXIII. Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active. — Ordinal Numerals	92

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIV. Third Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	94
XXXV. Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect Passive. — Possessive Pronouns	99
XXXVI. Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive. — Reading Lesson	101
XXXVII. Demonstrative Pronouns	104
XXXVIII. Demonstrative Pronouns (<i>continued</i>). — Reading Lesson	106
XXXIX. Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active. — Relative Pronouns	109
XL. Fourth Conjugation: Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. — Interrogative Pronouns. — Reading Lesson	112
XLI. Fourth Conjugation: Passive Voice. — Indefinite Pronouns	115
XLII. Infinitives of <i>Sum</i> : Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> (<i>Oratio Obliqua</i>): <i>Subject of the Infinitive</i> . — Reading Lesson	118
XLIII. Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations. — <i>Expressions of Place</i>	122
XLIV. Verbs in <i>-io</i> of the Third Conjugation. — Reading Lesson	125
XLV. Participles	128
XLVI. Deponent Verbs. — Reading Lesson	130
XLVII. <i>Possum</i> . — <i>Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse</i>	133
XLVIII. Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . — <i>Dative with Compounds</i> . — Reading Lesson	136
XLIX. <i>Dative with Intransitive Verbs</i>	138
L. <i>Ferō</i> and Compounds of <i>Ferō</i> . — Reading Lesson	140
LI. Irregular Verbs <i>Volō</i> , <i>Nōlō</i> , and <i>Mālō</i>	143
LII. Irregular Verbs <i>Eō</i> and <i>Fiō</i> . — <i>Two Datives</i> . — Reading Lesson	145

CHAPTER	PAGE
LIII. Derivation and Composition of Words	148
LIV. Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Sequence of Tenses</i> . — <i>Indirect Questions</i>	152
LV. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Active. — <i>Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)</i> . — Reading Lesson	155
LVI. First Conjugation: Subjunctive Passive. — <i>Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)</i>	158
LVII. Second Conjugation: Subjunctive Mood. — <i>Purpose and Result Clauses (continued)</i> . — Reading Lesson	160
LVIII. <i>Imperative Constructions</i> . — <i>Wishes</i>	163
LIX. Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Conditional Sentences</i> . — Reading Lesson	166
LX. Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive. — <i>Clauses with Cum</i>	172
LXI. Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. — <i>Indirect Discourse</i> . — Reading Lesson	176
LXII. Participles (<i>Review</i>). — <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	181
LXIII. Gerund and Gerundive. — Reading Lesson	185
LXIV. Supine. — <i>Expressions of Purpose</i>	189
LXV. Periphrastic Conjugations. — <i>Dative of Agent</i> . — Reading Lesson	193
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING	199
DECLENSION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	205
PARADIGMS OF VERBS	217
VOCABULARIES	241
INDEX	272

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.



CHAPTER I.

Introduction.

1. ALPHABET.

The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V,¹ X, Y, Z. It is the same as the English, with the omission of J and W. The letter I does duty for both I and J.

2. VOWELS.

The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. They are either *long* (—), *short* (˘), or *common* (=); that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

All the long vowels will be marked in this book. Unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short.

3. CONSONANTS.

The consonants may be classified as follows: —

Mutes: $\begin{cases} p, b, \text{ are } p \text{ mutes.} \\ t, d, \text{ are } t \text{ mutes.} \\ k, c, g, q, \text{ are } k \text{ mutes.} \end{cases}$

¹ In pronunciation the Romans made *u* and *v* very much alike, and in many books *u* is printed for *v* and *V* for *U*. In fact, *V* is merely a consonant *U*. In this book, however, *u* and *v* are both used.

Liquids : *l, m, n, r.*

Spirants : *f, i* consonant, *s, v* ; *s* is also a sibilant.

Double consonants : *x = cs* or *gs*, *z = ds*.

H is only the sign of a rough breathing.

Pronunciation.

NOTE. — Latin is now pronounced differently in different countries. English-speaking people use either the *Roman* or the *English* method.

4.

ROMAN METHOD.

1. Vowels.

ā has the sound of *a* in *father*.

ē has the sound of *e* in *fête* (like *a* in *fate*).

ī has the sound of *i* in *machine*.

ō has the sound of *o* in *holy*.

ū has the sound of *oo* in *boot*.

y is rare. It was pronounced like *u* in French, or *ü* in German ; that is, half-way between the sounds of *ī* and *ū*, as given above.

The short vowels have the same sound as the corresponding long ones, but require less time for utterance.

So *ă* is like *a* in *staff* (pronounced broadly).

ĕ is like *e* in *met*.

ĭ is like *i* in *pick*.

ŏ is like *o* in *wholly*.

ŭ is like *oo* in *book*.

2. Diphthongs.

ae has the sound of *ai* in *aisle*.

au has the sound of *ow* in *how*.

ei (rare) has the sound of *ei* in *eight*.

eu (rare) has the sound of *eu* in *feud*.

oe has the sound of *oi* in *boil*.

For *ui*, sometimes improperly called a diphthong, see 4, 6.

3. *Consonants.*

Consonants have generally the same sounds as in English, but

c has always the sound of *c* in *can*.

g has always the sound of *g* in *game*.

i consonant has always the sound of *y* in *yet*.

s has always the sound of *s* in *son* or *yes*.¹

t has always the sound of *t* in *tone*.²

v has always the sound of *w* in *we*.

ch has always the sound of *k*.

4. *Syllables.*

In a Latin word there are as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *a-gri-co-la*, *farmer*. A single consonant between two vowels belongs in the syllable with the following vowel: *a-mā-bam*, *I was loving*.

Two or more consonants between two vowels belong with the following vowel, if they can be pronounced with it:³ *oō-gnō-scō*, *I recognize*; *in-du-stri-a*, *diligence*; *ne-gle-gen-ti-a*, *carelessness*; *for-tis*, *brave*; *al-tis-si-mus*, *highest*; *pu-el-la*, *girl*; *dī-xit*, *he said*.

Compound words are divided into their component parts, *sub-it*, *under he goes*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the syllable before the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult the *antepenult*.⁴

¹ Never soft nor like *sh*.

² Never like *t* in *nation*.

³ In other words, any combination of consonants that begins a Latin word can begin a syllable.

⁴ *Ultima* is the Latin word for *last*; *penult* is shortened from *paene ultima*, *almost the last*; and *antepenult* means *before the penult*.

5. *Quantity of Vowels.*

NOTE. — In many instances the quantity of vowels can be learned only by observation, but the following rules will prove useful.

A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short: *vī-a, road*; *nī-hil, nothing*.

A vowel before *nd* or *nt* is short.

Diphthongs, and vowels produced by contraction are long: *nau-ta, sailor*; *cō-gō* (for *cōggō*), *I collect*.

A vowel before *nf*, *ns*, *gm*, *gn*, and consonant *i*, is long: *cōnfer, compare*; *amāns, loving*; *āgmen, line of march*; *cōgnōscō, recognize*; *cūius, of whom*.

6. *Quantity of Syllables.*

A syllable is long by nature when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *mā-ter, mother*; *Cae-sar, Caesar*.

A syllable is long by position when it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants¹ or *x* or *z*: *men-tis, of the mind*; *dux, leader*.

A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a-grī, fields*.

After *g*, *ng*, and sometimes *s*, also in *cui* (from *qui* and *quis*) and *huic* (from *hic*), *u* is pronounced together with the preceding letter, as in the English *queen*. It has no effect upon the quantity of the syllable in which or after which it stands: *ali-cui, to any one*; *un-gui-nis, of fat*; *quis, who* (interrogative); *qui, who* (relative); *cōn-suē-scō, I am accustomed*.

¹ Observe that a long syllable does not necessarily contain a long vowel. In *mēnsa, table*, the *e* is long; the word is therefore to be pronounced *main-sa*. In *mentis, of the mind*, the *e* is short, and the word is pronounced *mēn-tis*. The letter *h* is not a consonant, and does not affect the length of syllables.

7. *Accent.*

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pa'-ter, father*; *mā'-ter, mother*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long; otherwise on the antepenult: *ca-pel'-la, a goat*; *e-pi'-stu-la, a letter*; *te'-ne-brae, darkness*.

A few short words called enclitics are added to the end of other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable before the enclitic: *ego'que, and I*; *ibis'ne, shall you go?*

5.

ENGLISH METHOD.

Latin is pronounced by the English method just as if the words were English. The rules for quantity and accent are the same as in the Roman method, but the rules for quantity are generally disregarded except in so far as they affect the accent. In dividing words into syllables those who adopt the English pronunciation should observe the following rules:—

1. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* following a penultimate or any unaccented vowel belongs with the following vowel: *pa-ter, father*; *re-gi-na, queen*; *ma-tro-na, matron*.

2. A single consonant belongs with any preceding accented vowel, not penultimate, except *u*, but not when *e* or *i* before another vowel follows: *dom-i-nus, master*; but *mo-ne-o, I advise*.

3. In all other cases two or more consonants between two vowels are separated: *cor-pus, body*; *im-pro-bus, wicked*.

6.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The kinds of words used in language are called parts of speech. They are the noun, the adjective, the pronoun,

the verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

7.

GENDER.

The names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine: *Caesar, Caesar; vir, man; Rhēnus, Rhine; Notus, South wind; Iānuārius, January.*

The names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine: *Iūlia, Julia; filia, daughter; Italia, Italy; Rōma, Rome; Britannia, Britain; pōpulus, poplar.*

Indeclinable nouns are neuter: *nihil, nothing.*

Special rules will be given later.

8.

INFLECTION.

The relations between words are denoted in English for the most part by means of prepositions and auxiliaries or by the order of the words. When we say *the master of the house*, the relation between *master* and *house* is denoted by the preposition *of*; when we say *the dog bites the man*, the relation between the *dog*, the *act of biting*, and the *man*, is denoted by the order of the words; for if the order is reversed, the relations are also reversed. When we say *I love him*, the forms of the words show the relations. In Latin the relations between words are denoted almost exclusively by the forms of the words themselves, the forms being different according to the relations to be expressed. The changes in form which a word undergoes to denote different relations constitute the *Inflection* of the word. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *Declension*; the inflection of verbs is called *Conjugation*.

1. *Declension.*

Declined words have in Latin seven cases: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative, and Locative.*

The Nominative is the case of the subject of the sentence.

The Genitive is used to denote possession and some other relations, and is most frequently to be rendered by *of* in English.

The Dative is the case of the indirect object, and is most frequently to be rendered by *to* or *for*.

The Accusative is the case of the direct object.

The Vocative is the case of the person addressed. It has almost always the same form as the Nominative.

The Ablative expresses various relations to be expressed in English by prepositions; as, *from, with, by, in, etc.*

The Locative case denotes the place in which. This case exists only in names of towns and a few other words, and has generally the same form as the Dative or Ablative, sometimes that of the Genitive.

There are five ways of declining nouns; hence there are said to be five declensions.

Adjectives and pronouns are also declined, but with different forms for different genders.

2. *Conjugation.*

Latin verbs have three moods, Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative; also Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, and Supines.

The tenses of verbs in Latin are the same as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect.

There are in Latin, as in English, two voices, the Active and the Passive.

9.

NUMBER.

In Latin, as in English, there are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*. Inflected words have in Latin different forms for the two numbers.



CHAPTER II.

First or *a*-Declension.

10.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	mēnsa, <i>a table.</i>	mēnsae, <i>tables.</i>
G.	mēnsae, <i>of a table.</i>	mēnsarum, <i>of tables.</i>
D.	mēnsae, <i>to or for a table.</i>	mēnsis, <i>to or for tables.</i>
Ac.	mēnsam, <i>table.</i>	mēnsās, <i>tables.</i>
V.	mēnsa, <i>thou table.</i>	mēnsae, <i>ye tables.</i>
Ab.	mēnsā, <i>from, by, with,</i> <i>etc., a table.</i>	mēnsis, <i>from, by, with, etc.,</i> <i>tables.</i>

1. In the above paradigm which cases are alike?
2. What is the quantity of final *a* in the nominative singular?
3. The cases are formed by adding endings to a common part, called the stem.
4. In the first declension the stem ends in *ā*. This

final *ā* of the stem is called the stem-vowel¹ or characteristic.

5. The stem-vowel joined with the case-ending forms the termination.

6. The stem is *mēnsā*, and may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural.

7. Make a table of terminations from the paradigm above, and commit them to memory.

8. GENDER. — Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males.

11.

VOCABULARY.

Cornēlia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Cornelia.	amat , he, she, or it loves.
domīna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , mistress.	amant , they love.
epistula , -ae, <i>f.</i> , letter.	laudat , he, she, or it praises
fābula , -ae, <i>f.</i> , story.	laudant , they praise.
Iūlia ; -ae, <i>f.</i> , Julia.	habet , he, she, or it has.
mēnsa , -ae, <i>f.</i> , table.	habent , they have.
pictūra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , picture.	nārrat , he, she, or it tells.
puella , -ae, <i>f.</i> , girl.	nārrant , they tell.
rēgīna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , queen.	et, conj. , and.
rosa , -ae, <i>f.</i> , rose.	quid , what?
serva , -ae, <i>f.</i> , female servant, slave.	

Decline the nouns in the vocabulary like *mēnsa*.

12.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Rēgīna Iūliam amat,} \\ \text{Iūliam rēgīna amat,} \\ \text{Amat Iūliam rēgīna,} \end{array} \right\} \text{the queen loves Julia.}$
2. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Iūlia amat rēgīnam,} \\ \text{Rēgīnam amat Iūlia,} \\ \text{Amat rēgīnam Iūlia,} \end{array} \right\} \text{Julia loves the queen.}$

¹ The stem-vowel does not usually appear, and sometimes the case-ending is lost.

3. { Epistulās Iūlia habet,
Iūlia epistulās habet, } *Julia has the letters.*
{ Habet epistulās Iūlia, }
4. { Puella pictūram habet,
Pictūram habet puella, } *the girl has a picture.*
{ Pictūram puella habet, }

Notice in the above sentences that *a*, *an*, or *the* is used in the translation whenever the sense requires it, but that there are no corresponding Latin words. Notice, also, that the subject is in the nominative, and the object in the accusative.

13. RULE. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.*

14. RULE. — *The direct object is in the accusative.*

15.**EXERCISES.**

- I. 1. Puella fābulam nārrat. 2. Rēgina puellās laudat.
3. Servae dominam amant. 4. Domina servās laudat.
5. Puellae Iūliam laudant. 6. Cornēlia et Iūlia epistulās habent. 7. Domina mēnsam et pictūram habet.
8. Puellae fābulās nārrant. 9. Quid habet Cornēlia?
10. Rosam habet.

- II. 1. Cornelia tells stories. 2. She praises the servant. 3. The girls have roses. 4. They praise the queen. 5. The girl has a letter. 6. Julia has a table and pictures. 7. The servant loves the mistress. 8. The queen praises Julia and Cornelia. 9. The servants love the girls. 10. What have the girls?

CHAPTER III.

First or *a*-Declension. — *Continued.**Genitive with Nouns.***16.** ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Puella bonam rēginam amat**, *the girl loves the good queen.*
2. **Rēgina bona servās habet**, *the good queen has servants.*
3. **Iūlia servam Cornēliae laudat**, *Julia praises Cornelia's servant (the servant of Cornelia).*
4. **Rēgina rosae pictūram laudat**, *the queen praises the picture of the rose.*

Notice that the adjectives have the same terminations as their nouns, and that the adjective¹ may precede or follow its noun. Notice, also, that *Cornēliae* limits *servam*, and does not mean the same person; that *rosae* limits *pictūram*, and does not mean the same thing; and that *Cornēliae* and *rosae* are in the genitive.

17. RULE. — *A noun limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive.*

18. VOCABULARY.

agricola , -ae, <i>m.</i> , farmer.	poēta , -ae, <i>m.</i> , poet.
ālā , -ae, <i>f.</i> , wing.	alba , white.
columba , -ae, <i>f.</i> , dove.	bona , good.
filia , ² -ae, <i>f.</i> , daughter.	fīda , faithful, trusty.
nauta , -ae, <i>m.</i> , sailor.	longa , long.
patria , -ae, <i>f.</i> , native land.	

1. Notice the gender of each noun in the above vocabulary. See 10. 8.

¹ The adjective when emphatic precedes its substantive, otherwise it follows it. It more often precedes.

² The dative and ablative plural of *filia* is usually *filii&ibus*.

2. The adjective forms given above are to be used only with feminine nouns, and are to be declined like *mēnsa*.

3. Decline together *bona puella, rosa alba, fida serva*.

19.

EXERCISE.

I. 1. Poēta bonam fābulam nārrat. 2. Agricolaē fidās servās laudant. 3. Fīlia agricolae albam columbam habet. 4. Rēgīna bonam puellam amat. 5. Fīliae nautārum longās epistulās habent. 6. Nautae longās fābulās nārrant. 7. Columba albās alās habet. 8. Puella poētārum fābulās laudat. 9. Domina Iūliae mēnsam longam habet. 10. Nauta patriam amat.

II. 1. Poets tell good stories. 2. Cornelia loves the good daughter of the sailor. 3. The queen's daughter has pictures. 4. The faithful girl loves the good queen. 5. The poet praises the good girl's letter. 6. The sailor tells a good story. 7. Julia has faithful servants. 8. What has the farmer's daughter? 9. She has a white rose. 10. He praises the poet's native land.



CHAPTER IV.

Present Indicative of Sum.

*Agreement of Verbs.*20. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.

First Person, *sum, I am.*
 Second Person, *es, thou art.*
 Third Person, *est, he, she, or it is.*

PLURAL.

sumus, we are.
estis, you are.
sunt, they are.

21. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella rosās habet, the girl has roses.*
2. *Puellae rosās habent, the girls have roses.*
3. *Est bona, she is good.*
4. *Sumus fidae, we are faithful.*

Notice that the subjects in (3) and (4) are not expressed by separate words, but by the form of the verbs. Notice, also, that the verbs have different forms for subjects of different persons and numbers.

22. RULE. — *A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

23. VOCABULARY.

<i>aqua, -ae, f., water.</i>	<i>māgna, large.</i>
<i>Britannia, -ae, f., Britain.</i>	<i>parva, small.</i>
<i>silva, -ae, f., forest, woods.</i>	<i>sum, I am.</i>
<i>grāta, welcome, pleasing.</i>	<i>in (prep. with abl.), in, on.</i>
<i>laeta, glad, cheerful.</i>	<i>sed, conj., but.</i>
<i>lāta, broad.</i>	<i>ubi, adv., where?</i>

24. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Sumus laetae.* 2. *Estis bonae.* 3. *Silvae Britanniae sunt māgnae.* 4. *Ubi est aqua?* 5. *Aqua est in silvā.* 6. *Fābulae poētārum sunt grātae.* 7. *Agricolae¹ mēnsa est lāta.* 8. *Ālae columbārum sunt albae.* 9. *Es fida.* 10. *Rēgīna filiam² parvam laudat.* 11. *Pictūrae sunt grātae.* 12. *Rēgīna est in Britannia, sed filia est in patriā.*

¹ The genitive when it is emphatic is put before the noun which it limits.

² The possessive pronouns *his, her, its, and their*, are often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in translating.

II. 1. I am glad. 2. We are small. 3. Water is good. 4. You are faithful. 5. The sailor's letters are welcome. 6. The native land of the queen is large. 7. (There)¹ are broad forests in Britain. 8. The servants love (their) good mistress. 9. The poet tells a pleasing story. 10. (There) are doves in the forests. 11. What has the little girl? 12. She has a white dove. 13. The farmer is in the woods.



CHAPTER V.

Predicate Noun; Appositive.

25. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella est serva*, the girl is a slave.
2. *Poëta est agricola*, the poet is a farmer.
3. *Iñlia est bona domina*, Julia is a good mistress.

Notice that *serva*, *agricola*, and *domina* are in the predicate and denote the same person as *puella*, *poëta*, and *Iñlia*. A noun thus used is called a *predicate noun*.

26. RULE. — *A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

27. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Poëta Iñliam filiam amat*, the poet loves his daughter Julia.
2. *Poëta servam Iñliae filiae laudat*, the poet praises the servant of his daughter Julia.

¹ Words in parenthesis are not to be expressed in Latin.

Notice that *filiam* denotes the same person as *Iuliam*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Notice, also, that *filiae* denotes the same person as *Iuliae*, and is in the same case, but is not a predicate noun. Nouns thus used are called *appositives*.

28. RULE. — *The appositive agrees in case with the noun which it limits.*

29.

VOCABULARY.

aquila , -ae, <i>f.</i> , eagle.	pecūnia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , money, a sum of money.
fēmina , -ae, <i>f.</i> , woman.	cāra , dear.
Galba , -ae, <i>m.</i> , Galba.	multa , much ; <i>pl.</i> , many.
Graecia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Greece.	vocat , he calls.
incola , -ae, <i>m. and f.</i> , inhabitant.	vocant , they call.
insula , -ae, <i>f.</i> , island.	

30.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es cāra filia. 2. Aquila est silvārum incola. 3. Graecia est poētārum patria. 4. Poēta filiam Cornēliam amat. 5. Alae aquilārum sunt lātae. 6. Fēmina puellās parvās vocat. 7. Britannia est māgna insula. 8. Rēginae filia māgnam pecūniam habet. 9. Nautae filiae sunt fidāe servae. 10. Agricolae multās columbās habent. 11. Ubi est agricola Galba ?

II. 1. The queen is a good woman. 2. She praises (her) daughter Julia. 3. (There) are large forests in (my) native land. 4. The little girl calls (her) doves. 5. The inhabitants of the island are sailors. 6. Cornelia's letters are welcome. 7. The wings of the dove are long and white. 8. (There) is good water on the island. 9. I am a farmer, but you are a sailor. 10. The queen and (her) daughter Julia are glad.

CHAPTER VI.

Second or *o*-Declension: Nouns in *-us*.*Indirect Object.*

31.

PARADIGM.

servus, m., slave.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>N.</i>	<i>servus</i>	<i>servi</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>servi</i>	<i>servōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>servīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>servum</i>	<i>servōs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>serve</i>	<i>servī</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>servō</i>	<i>servīs</i>

1. In the above paradigm, what cases are alike?
2. The stem ends in *-ō*; as, *servō*-.
3. The stem may be found by dropping the ending *-rum* of the genitive plural, and changing *ō* to *ō*.
4. Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.
5. GENDER. — Nouns in *-us* of the second declension are masculine.

32.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Galba filiae fābulam nārrat*, Galba tells a story to his daughter.
2. *Nautae agricolis fābulās nārrant*, the sailors tell stories to the farmers.

Notice that *filiae* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrat*; and that *agricolis* is in the dative and depends upon *nārrant*. Such datives are called *indirect objects*.

33. RULE. — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.*

34.

VOCABULARY.

amicus , -i, <i>m.</i> , friend.	hortus , -i, <i>m.</i> , garden.
diligentia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , diligence.	servus , -i, <i>m.</i> , servant, slave.
dominus , -i, <i>m.</i> , master (of servants).	Titus , -i, <i>m.</i> , Titus.
equus , -i, <i>m.</i> , horse.	dat , he gives.
fillus , -i, <i>m.</i> , son.	dant , they give.
Helvētius , -ī, Helvetian; <i>as a noun</i> , a Helvetian.	

1. Each of the adjectives thus far introduced, when used with masculine nouns, has a masculine form declined like **servus**.

For the feminine form, see 18.

2. Decline together **bonus servus**, **hortus māgnus**, **albus equus**.

35.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. **Amīcus Galbae multōs equōs habet.** 2. **Equus albus est in hortō agricolae.** 3. **Titus filiō equum album dat.** 4. **Dominus bonōs servōs laudat.** 5. **Domīni servī fidīs pecūniam dant.** 6. **Fēminae diligentiam servārū laudant.** 7. **Filius agricolae māgnū hortum habet.** 8. **Fēmina amīcō cārō epistulam longam dat.** 9. **Nautae sunt amīci rēgīnae.** 10. **Ubi, Tite, est equus agricolae Galbae?** 11. **In hortō est agricolae Galbae equus.**

II. 1. The slave has a good horse. 2. The islands of Greece are many. 3. He tells good stories to (his) friends. 4. They are friends of Titus. 5. There are many horses on the island. 6. The island is small, but it has many inhabitants. 7. The slaves praise (their) master's daughter. 8. The poet is an inhabitant of Britain. 9. He gives water to (his) friend's horses. 10. Eagles have broad wings.

CHAPTER VII.

**Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -um;
Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.**

*Agreement of Adjectives.***36.****PARADIGM.****bellum, n., war.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	bellum	bella
<i>G.</i>	belli	bellōrum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	bellō	bellis

1. The stem ends in *ō*; as, bellō.
2. GENDER. — Nouns in *-um* are neuter.
3. Each adjective thus far introduced, when used with a neuter noun, has a neuter form declined like bellum.

These adjectives are declined in full as follows: —

37.**PARADIGM.****Bonus, good.**

	SINGULAR.	
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>G.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>D.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Ac.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>V.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Ab.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>PLURAL.</i>	
		<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>D.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Ac.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>V.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

38. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Hortus est magnus. | 5. Dōnum est magnum. |
| 2. Horti sunt magnī. | 6. Dōna sunt magna. |
| 3. Mēnsa est magna. | 7. Laetum nautam amat. |
| 4. Mēnsae sunt māgnae. | 8. Laetōs nautās amant. |

Observe that each noun in the preceding sentences is limited by an adjective, and that each adjective has the same gender, number, and case as its noun. Notice especially *laetum* and *laetōs*.

39. RULE. — *An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.*

40. VOCABULARY.

bellum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , war.	cēlat, he conceals.
concillium, ¹ -ī, <i>n.</i> , meeting, council.	cēlant, they conceal.
dōnum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , gift.	convocat, he calls together.
iniūria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , wrong.	convocant, they call together.
nūntius, ¹ -ī, <i>m.</i> , a messenger.	culpat, he blames.
malus, -a, -um, bad.	culpant, they blame.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; <i>as a noun</i> , a Roman.	

¹ Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* generally contract *īi* of the genitive singular into *i* without changing the accent.

Adjectives already used in the masculine or feminine :—

albus, -a, -um.	laetus, -a, -um.
bonus, -a, -um.	lātus, -a, -um.
cārus, -a, -um.	longus, -a, -um.
fidus, -a, -um.	māgnus, -a, -um.
grātus, -a, -um.	multus, -a, -um.
Helvētius, -a, -um.	parvus, -a, -um.

41.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nautae laeti. 2. Nautae laetō. 3. Poētārum bonōrum. 4. In hortō māgnō. 5. Nautam parvum. 6. Equis albis. 7. Multī poētae. 8. Multōrum agricolārum. 9. Bonō servō. 10. Agricolās multōs.

II. 1. Malus servus in silvā equum dominī cēlat. 2. Nūntius fidus concilium Rōmānōrum convocat. 3. Amīcis multa dōna dat. 4. Dominī iniūriās servōrum cēlant. 5. Nauta agricolae grātum dōnum dat. 6. Ālae columbārum albārum sunt māgnae. 7. Nūntius Rōmānōrum in conciliō Helvētiōs culpat. 8. Incolae Britanniae rēgīnam amant. 9. Bellum in Graeciā est māgnū. 10. In silvā sunt māgnae aquilae. 11. Ubi, amīce, est equus nūntī?

III. 1. The messenger tells a long story to the Romans. 2. We are faithful servants. 3. The slave conceals (his) money in the garden. 4. He is a Roman messenger. 5. The poet's little son is fond of stories. 6. (There) are large roses in the garden. 7. Galba is a friend of the Helvetians. 8. The farmer's son has a large horse. 9. The servant is calling (his) master's horses. 10. He calls together (his) dear friends. 11. The diligence of the girls is great.

CHAPTER VIII.

Second or o-Declension: Nouns in -er and -ir.

Imperfect Indicative of the Verb Sum.

42.

PARADIGMS.

puer, m., boy.	ager,¹ m., field.	vir, m., man.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>G.</i> pueri	agri	virī
<i>D.</i> puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Ac.</i> puerum	agrum	virum
<i>V.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>Ab.</i> puerō	agrō	virō
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> pueri	agri	virī
<i>G.</i> puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>D.</i> pueris	agris	virīs
<i>Ac.</i> puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>V.</i> pueri	agri	virī
<i>Ab.</i> pueris	agris	virīs

1. How do the terminations of nouns in -er and -ir differ from those of nouns in -us ?

2. What is the stem of puer ? of ager ? See 31. 3.

3. Decline together puer parvus, lātus ager, vir fidus.

4. GENDER. — Nouns in -er and -ir of the second declension are masculine.

¹ Most nouns in -er are declined like ager. The only one in this book declined like puer is liberī (plural).

43. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.

1. *eram, I was.*
2. *erās, you were.*
3. *erat, he was.*

PLURAL.

- erāmus, we were.*
- erātis, you were.*
- erant, they were.*

44.

VOCABULARY.

ager, agrī, m., field.**discipulus, -ī, m., pupil.****liberī, -ōrum, m., children.****magister, -trī, m., teacher.****Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus.****puer, puerī, m., boy.****vir, virī, m., man.****perītus, -a, -um, skillful.****nōn, adv., not.****semper, adv., always.****45.**

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Filius Titī erat nōn laetus. 2. Eram amicus fili¹ magistrī. 3. Erās semper fidus amicus. 4. Poēta Rōmānus dīligentiam agricolae perītī laudat. 5. Vir equum amīcī in agrō habet. 6. Erāmus discipulī fidī. 7. Amīcus Galbae erat agricola perītus. 8. Rōmānī concilium convocant et nūntium Helvētiōrum culpant. 9. Helvētīī fēminās et liberōs in silvā cēlant. 10. Magister bonōs puerōs semper laudat. 11. Rōmānī iniuriās Helvētiōrum culpant. 12. Mārcus semper erat poētārum amīcus.

II. 1. Many were the wars of the Romans. 2. You were good children. 3. Galba was a welcome messenger. 4. The man gives a horse to his son. 5. The Roman farmers were not skillful. 6. The bad boys were in the farmer's garden. 7. The letters of friends are always welcome. 8. You were a faithful pupil, but (your) friend Marcus was not faithful. 9. We were always good boys. 10. Good masters do not always have faithful servants. 11. Galba's horse is the gift of a friend.

¹ See footnote to 40.

CHAPTER IX.

Adjectives in *-er*.*Future Indicative of the Verb Sum ; Dative of Possessor.*

46.

PARADIGMS.

Miser, wretched.

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	miser	miseræ	miserum
<i>G.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miserī
<i>D.</i>	miserō	miseræ	miserō
<i>Ac.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>V.</i>	miser	miseræ	miserum
<i>Ab.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō
	PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miseræ
<i>G.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>D.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Ac.</i>	miserōs	miserās	miseræ
<i>V.</i>	miserī	miseræ	miseræ
<i>Ab.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

Pulcher, beautiful.

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>G.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>D.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Ac.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>V.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Ab.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

	PLURAL.	
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G. pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D. pulchrīs	pulchris	pulchris
Ac. pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
V. pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Ab. pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

1. Observe that the masculine has the same peculiarities as substantives in *-er*. What are they?

2. Most adjectives in *-er* of the second declension are declined like *pulcher*. The only exceptions in this book are *miser* and *liber*. Decline together *miser servus*, *equus niger*.

47. FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE VERB *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>erō, I shall be.</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be.</i>
2. <i>eris, you will be.</i>	<i>eritis, you will be.</i>
3. <i>erit, he will be.</i>	<i>erunt, they will be.</i>

48. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puer librum habet, the boy has a book.*
2. *Eat puerō liber, the boy has (there is to the boy) a book.*
3. *Titus equum habet, Titus has a horse.*
4. *Eat Titō equus, Titus has (there is to Titus) a horse.*

1. Notice the two ways of expressing possession. The form with the dative and the verb *sum* should be used in the exercises, unless the teacher prefer to have the sentence expressed in two ways. The dative thus used is called the *dative of possessor*.

49. RULE. — *The dative is used with sum to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.*

50.

VOCABULARY.

carrus , -i, <i>m.</i> , cart.	niger , -gra, -grum, black.
frumentum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , grain.	pulcher , -chra, -chrum, beautiful.
liber , -brī, <i>m.</i> , book.	
dēfessus , -a, -um, tired.	dēlectat , he delights.
liber , -era, -erum, free.	dēlectant , they delight.
miser , -era, -erum, wretched, unhappy.	

51.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Es agricola, eris poëta. 2. Nūntius in silvā equum dēfessum cēlat. 3. Filiō agricolae est carrus māgnus. 4. Filius agricolae carrum māgnum habet. 5. Vir frumentum nōn habet. 6. Virō est frumentum in carrō. 7. Aqua erit in mēnsā servī. 8. Equī nūntiōrum erunt dēfessi. 9. Helvētiī erant liberī. 10. Vir filiae pulchrum librum dat. 11. Agrī et silvae semper poētā dēlectant. 12. Peritī magistri dīligentiam discipulōrum laudant. 13. Eritis amīcī puerōrum miserōrum. 14. Mārcus nigrō equō frumentum dat. 15. Erimus fidī discipulī.

II. 1. I shall be tired. 2. The boy has a beautiful book. 3. He gives the boy a white dove. 4. He calls together the friends of the messenger. 5. Where are the master's books? 6. The diligence of the boy delights (his) faithful teacher. 7. You will be faithful, and we shall be grateful. 8. There will be a meeting of teachers in my friend's garden. 9. The slaves were unhappy. 10. He always praises the faithful.¹ 11. The children have many presents.

¹ Plural adjectives are frequently used in Latin, as in English, without a substantive. When the substantive understood denotes persons, the adjective should be in the masculine; but when the word *things* can be understood, the adjective should be neuter.

Compare the English, "The land of the *free*, and the home of the *brave*."

CHAPTER X.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

52.

PARADIGMS.

	princeps, m., <i>chief.</i>	rēx, m., <i>king.</i>	mīles, m., <i>soldier.</i>	caput, n., <i>head.</i>
	Stem princīp-	rēg-	mīlit-	capit-
	SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	prīnceps	rēx	mīles	caput
<i>G.</i>	prīncipls	rēgis	mīlits	capitis
<i>D.</i>	prīncipī	rēgī	mīlitī	capitī
<i>Ac.</i>	prīncipem	rēgem	mīlitem	caput
<i>Ab.</i>	prīncipe	rēge	mīlite	capite
	PLURAL.			
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	prīncipēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs	capita
<i>G.</i>	prīncipum	rēgum	mīlitum	capitum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	prīncipibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus	capitibus

1. In the third declension, the stem ends in a consonant or *i*.

2. Stems ending in a consonant, are classed according to their final letter, as mute stems and liquid stems.¹

3. To find the stem, drop the ending *-um* of the genitive plural.

4. Make a table of the case-endings from **prīnceps**.

5. Notice that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative.

¹ For sibilant stems, see 61.

What happens when *c* (see *iūdex*, *-icis*, in 53) or *g* precedes the ending *s*? When *t* precedes the ending *s*?

53.

VOCABULARY.

caput , -itis, <i>n.</i> , head.	rēx , rēgis, <i>m.</i> , king.
iūdex , -icis, <i>m.</i> , judge.	cottīdiē , <i>adv.</i> , daily.
mīles , -itis, <i>m.</i> , soldier.	saepe , <i>adv.</i> , often.
pīlum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , javelin.	vāstat , he lays waste.
princeps , -ipis, <i>m.</i> , chief.	vāstant , they lay waste.

54.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Miles multās bellī fābulās pueris cottīdiē nārrat.
 2. Bella longa bonōs virōs nōn dēlectant. 3. Militēs agrōs
 agricolārum vāstant. 4. Rēx multōs¹ et fidōs servōs habet.
 5. Iūdicī sunt multī et bonī libri. 6. Rēgēs et principēs
 saepe multōs et pulchrōs equōs habent. 7. Filius militis
 erat peritus agricola. 8. Iūdex pueris librōs bonōs dat.
 9. Multī puerī fābulās militum amant. 10. Caput equi
 nigrī est parvum. 11. Militēs Rōmānī longa pīla habent.

II. 1. The horse has a large head. 2. The king's
 soldiers lay waste the broad fields. 3. The judge's
 son has many friends. 4. The chiefs of the Helvetians
 give grain to their friends. 5. The teacher praises (his)
 faithful pupils. 6. The wretched slave will be free.
 7. Good books do not always delight children. 8. The
 soldier gives grain and water to (his) tired horses.
 9. The soldier has a large black horse. 10. The farmer
 has grain in (his) cart. 11. Good chiefs have faithful
 soldiers.

¹ In Latin two adjectives limiting the same substantive are generally connected by the conjunction *et*.

CHAPTER XI.

Third Declension: Mute Stems. — *Continued.**First Conjugation, Present Indicative Active.*

55.

PARADIGMS.

	voluptās, f., pleasure.	pēs, m., foot.	cūstōs, m. and f., keeper.
Stem	voluptāt-	ped-	cūstōd-
SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	voluptās	pēs	cūstōs
<i>G.</i>	voluptātis	pedis	cūstōdis
<i>D.</i>	voluptāti	pedi	cūstōdī
<i>Ac.</i>	voluptātem	pedem	cūstōdem
<i>Ab.</i>	voluptāte	pede	cūstōde
PLURAL.			
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	voluptātēs	pedēs	cūstōdēs
<i>G.</i>	voluptātum	pedum	cūstōdum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	voluptātibus	pedibus	cūstōdibus

What happens when *d* or *t* precedes the nominative ending *s*?

56.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts¹ of Amō.

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.²
amō, I love;	amāre, to love;	amāvī, I loved;	amātum, to love.

¹ These are called principal parts because, when these are known, all forms of the verb may be readily found.

² The supine is the same in form as the neuter of the perfect participle.

1. To find the present stem of a verb, drop the final *re* of the present infinitive active.

2. Verbs are said to be of the first conjugation, when the present stem ends in *ā*; i.e. when the present infinitive active ends in *āre*.

3. Give the principal parts of *laudō, nārrō, vocō, cēlō, culpō, dēlectō, vāstō*.

4. *Dō, dāre, dedi, dātum*, which resembles a verb of the first conjugation, has a short stem-vowel, *ā*.

57.**PARADIGM.***Present Indicative Active of Amō.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>amō, I love.</i> ¹	<i>amāmus, we love.</i>
2. <i>amās, you love.</i>	<i>amātis, you love.</i>
3. <i>amat, he loves.</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>

Make a table of the terminations and commit them to memory.

58.**EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. *Laudō, laudāmus.* 2. *Nārrās, nārrātis.* 3. *Puer vocat, equum vocat.* 4. *Cēlās, cēlāmus.* 5. *Agricola servum culpāt.* 6. *Militēs culpās.* 7. *Puellās culpāmus.* 8. *Aquam equīs damus.* 9. *Puerōs vocās.* 10. *Fidōs servōs laudātis.*

II. 1. *I tell, we tell.* 2. *You are praising, he does praise.* 3. *We are calling, he is calling.* 4. *I conceal, you are concealing.* 5. *He is calling, the master is*

¹ Also *I do love, and I am loving.*

calling. 6. He calls together the chiefs. 7. He is calling together (his) friends. 8. It delights the poet. 9. We give gifts. 10. He does give gifts.

59.

VOCABULARY.

comes , -itis, <i>m. and f.</i> , companion.	voluptās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , pleasure.
cūstōs , -ōdis, <i>m. and f.</i> , guard, keeper.	liberō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free.
eques , -itis, <i>m.</i> , horseman; <i>in plural</i> , cavalry.	parō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare.
lapis , -idis, <i>m.</i> , stone.	parātus , -a, -um (<i>perf. part. of parō</i> , used as <i>adj.</i>), prepared, ready.
obses , -idis, <i>m. and f.</i> , hostage.	currit , he runs.
pēs , pedis , <i>m.</i> , foot.	currunt , they run.
	in (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), into, to, against.

60.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Equitī pulchrum equum dō. 2. Amāmus fidōs amicōs. 3. Rēx militēs dēfessōs culpat. 4. Libērī prīncipum Helvētiōrum erant obsidēs. 5. Librōs comitum cēlās. 6. Comes nautae erat miser. 7. Iūdicis filiū cottidiē laudāmus. 8. Multae sunt voluptātēs agricolae filiōrum. 9. Caput equi est nigrum, sed pedēs sunt albī. 10. Fidī cūstōdēs nōn sunt rēgī. 11. In agrīs erant lapidēs multī. 12. Agrōs rēgis vāstātis. 13. Equitēs equīs frumentum parant. 14. Equus iūdicis in hortum currit. 15. Helvētiī parātī erant obsidēs dare.

II. 1. Many (men) love pleasure. 2. The weary soldier conceals (his) wrong. 3. The hostages of the Romans run into the woods. 4. The companions of kings are not always good. 5. The soldier's javelin was long. 6. The cavalry set free the hostages. 7. I often censure bad pupils, and you always love the good. 8. The feet of

the horsemen will be free. 9. The horsemen have grain in carts. 10. We tell stories to the little children every day.



CHAPTER XII.

Third Declension: Liquid Stems.

First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Active.

61.

PARADIGMS.

	cōnsul, <i>m.</i> , consul.	victor, <i>m.</i> , victor.	virgō, <i>f.</i> , virgin.	vulnus, <i>n.</i> , wound.
Stem	cōnsul-	victor-	virgin-	vulner- ¹
SINGULAR.				
<i>N., V.</i>	cōnsul	victor	virgō	vulnus
<i>G.</i>	cōnsulis	victōris	virginis	vulneris
<i>D.</i>	cōnsuli	victōrī	virginī	vulneri
<i>Ac.</i>	cōnsulem	victōrem	virginem	vulnus
<i>Ab.</i>	cōnsule	victōre	virgine	vulnere
PLURAL.				
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	virginēs	vulnera
<i>G.</i>	cōnsulum	victōrum	virginum	vulnerum
<i>D., Ab.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	virginibus	vulneribus

62. In English, questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* require no interrogative word. For the Latin method of expressing such questions, see the following sentences:—

¹ This was originally an *s* stem, but *s* was changed to *r*.

1. *Puerumne, Iſſia, culpās ? Do you blame the boy, Julia ?*
2. *Nōnne servus est miser ? Is not the slave unhappy ? or, The slave is unhappy, is he not ?*
3. *Num magister vocat ? Is the master calling ? or, The master is not calling, is he ?*

The interrogative *ne* is an enclitic, always appended to the emphatic word. See 4. and 7.

Nōnne expects the answer *yes*; *num* expects the answer *no*; *ne* does not indicate what answer is expected.

63.

PARADIGM.

Imperfect Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>amābam, I was loving.</i> ¹ | <i>amābāmus, we were loving.</i> |
| 2. <i>amābās, you were loving.</i> | <i>amābātis, you were loving.</i> |
| 3. <i>amābat, he was loving.</i> | <i>amābant, they were loving.</i> |

Inflect the imperfect indicative active of *laudō, nārrō, vocō, dō, cōlō, culpō, parō, vāstō*.

64.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Culpābās, culpābātis.* 2. *Laudābam, laudābāmus.*
 3. *Cēlābat, cēlābant.* 4. *Parābam, parābat, parābant.*
 5. *Puellās laudābat, cottīdiē laudat.* 6. *Nārrābās, puellae nārrābant.* 7. *Vocābam, vocābāmus.* 8. *Dabat, dabās, dabant.* 9. *Columbam liberābat.* 10. *Prīncipem culpāmus.*

II. 1. *I was blaming, we were blaming.* 2. *He was praising, they were praising.* 3. *You were calling, he was calling.* 4. *I was calling, we were calling.* 5. *He was giving, we were giving.* 6. *He was telling, the boy is telling.* 7. *I am preparing, I was preparing.* 8. *They are laying waste, he is laying waste.* 9. *He was freeing the slaves.* 10. *We were concealing the money.*

¹ Also *I loved, I did love, I used to love.*

65.

VOCABULARY.

clāmor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , shout, noise.	vulnus , -eris, <i>n.</i> , wound.
cōsul , -ulis, <i>m.</i> , consul.	ōrnō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deck, adorn.
corōna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , crown, garland.	
nōmen , -inis, <i>n.</i> , name.	mittit , he sends.
oppidum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , town.	mittunt , they send.
soror , -ōris, <i>f.</i> , sister.	ē , ¹ <i>ex</i> (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), from, out of.
victor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , conqueror, victor.	ne ,
virgō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , maiden, virgin.	nōne , } <i>signs of questions.</i>
	num ,

66.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs cōsulis ex oppidō currunt. 2. Nōne magister clāmōrem puerōrum culpāt? 3. Victōrēs Rōmānōrum corōna ōrnābat. 4. Nōmen virginis erat Iūlia. 5. Cūstōdēsne obsidum culpābās? 6. Bonum rēgem et iūdicem laudābāmus. 7. Cēlābātis, puerī, librōs sorōris. 8. Obsidi aquam dabam. 9. Servi principis agrōs parābant. 10. Num mīles vulnera cēlābat? 11. Cōsul ex agrīs in oppidum militēs multōs mittit. 12. Liberōs in Britanniam obsidēs mittunt. 13. Nōne parātus eris victōrem ōrnāre? 14. Cōsuli voluptātēs nōn multae sunt.

II. 1. A crown was adorning the head of the victor. 2. Do you praise the diligence of the pupils every day? 3. The soldiers are sending (their) children out of the town. 4. (My) sister's horse is black. 5. Galba runs into the field and calls the horse. 6. Was not the maiden's companion a Roman knight (*eques*)? 7. We were setting free the feet of the slaves. 8. There were many stones in the garden. 9. The Roman consul is laying waste the towns and fields. 10. The shouts of the pupils did not delight the master.

¹ ē is used before consonants, ex before vowels and consonants.

CHAPTER XIII.

Third Declension. — Continued.

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Active; Ablative of Instrument.

67.

PARADIGM.

Future Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. amābō, <i>I shall love.</i> | amābimus, <i>we shall love.</i> |
| 2. amābis, <i>you will love.</i> | amābitis, <i>you will love.</i> |
| 3. amābit, <i>he will love.</i> | amābunt, <i>they will love.</i> |

68.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Laudābit, laudābunt. 2. Ōrnābō, ōrnābimus.
 3. Nārrāmus, nārrābāmus, nārrābimus. 4. Vāstat, vāstābat, vāstābit. 5. Cēlābās, cēlābis, cēlābunt. 6. Vocābit, ōrnābat, ōrnat. 7. Dabō, dabimus, dabunt. 8. Vocābitis, vocābātis, vocātis. 9. Dēlectat, dēlectābit, dēlectābat. 10. Ōrnāmus, ōrnābāmus, ōrnābant.

II. 1. I shall praise, we shall praise. 2. He is calling, he was telling, I shall tell. 3. We shall conceal, he will conceal. 4. I shall set free, we shall set free, they will set free. 5. He will give, you will give, they will give. 6. We will call, it will delight, they will deck. 7. He is blaming, they were blaming, I shall blame. 8. He will prepare, they will prepare, you will prepare. 9. He will tell, I was telling, they will tell. 10. We were praising, he will call, you will tell.

69.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Puella rosīs caput ōrnat, the girl adorns her head with roses.*
2. *Poēta fābulīs liberōs dēlectat, the poet delights his children with stories.*
3. *Lapide equitem vulnerat, he wounds the horseman with a stone.*

Observe that *rosīs*, *fābulīs*, and *lapide* are in the ablative case, and that they show the instrument or means employed in doing the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of instrument or means*.

70. RULE. — *Instrument or means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

71.

VOCABULARY.

arbor , -oris, <i>f.</i> , tree.	Graeci , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Greeks.
carmen , -inis, <i>n.</i> , song, poem.	vulnerō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.
Caesar , -aris, <i>m.</i> , Caesar.	portō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.
Gallia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Gaul.	ad (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), to, for, near.
Homērus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Homer.	ā , ¹ ab , (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), from, by.
homō , -inis, <i>m.</i> , man.	
pater , patris, <i>m.</i> , father.	
Graecus , -a, -um, Greek.	

72.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Homērum, principem Graecōrum poētārum, magistri et discipulī laudābant. 2. Multi liberi principur Galliae obsidēs erant Caesaris. 3. Arborēs multae c. aetiae rēgis hortum ōrnant. 4. Nōne mīles pilō equitem vulnerābit? 5. Bonī puerī columbam pulchram

¹ ā before consonants, ab before vowels and h.

lapide nōn vulnerābunt. 6. Virginēs patrem amant et laudant. 7. Carmina poētae multōs hominēs dēlectant. 8. Bonōs librōs amābis, nōn cēlābis. 9. Cūstōdibus pila dabimus, obsidibus aquam. 10. Eques in capite vulnus habet. 11. Nūntius ab Helvētiis ad Caesarem dōna portat. 12. Puer librum ad sorōrem mittit. 13. Amīcīs voluptātēs multās pecūniā parābat.

II. 1. Men love (their) children, and often praise (them). 2. The victors will bring grain from the fields. 3. The shouts of the soldiers will not wound the horsemen of Caesar. 4. The maiden has a crown of roses. 5. Bad men are not good companions, are they? 6. The horse's feet are in the water. 7. The names of the pupils are in the master's book. 8. You will give a book to (your) father, but a rose to (your) sister. 9. Will you set free the sister of the consul? 10. The boy is ready to carry a letter to (his) father.



CHAPTER XIV.

Third Declension: Stems in i.

First Conjugation, Perfect Indicative Active; Perfect Indicative of Sum; Ablative of Manner.

73.

PARADIGMS.

	ignis, m.,	hostis, m. and f.,	caedēs, f.,
	<i>fire.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
Stem	igni-	hosti-	caedi-

SINGULAR.

N., V.	ignis	hostis	caedēs
G.	ignis	hostis	caedis
D.	ignī	hostī	caedi
Ac.	ignem	hostem	caedem
Ab.	ignī, -e	hoste	caede

PLURAL.

N., V.	ignēs	hostēs	caedēs
G.	ignium	hostium	caedium
D., Ab.	ignibus	hostibus	caedibus
Ac.	ignēs, -is	hostēs, -is	caedēs, -is

1. Most nouns in *-is* are declined like *hostis*, some like *ignis*; but a few have only *im* in the accusative singular, and only *i* in the ablative singular.

2. Whenever any of these nouns are introduced in this book that are not declined like *hostis*, their peculiarities will be given.

3. Nouns in *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive (that is, not having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative) are declined like *caedēs*.

74.

PARADIGMS.

Perfect Indicative Active of Amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. amāvī,	{ <i>I loved.</i> <i>I have loved.</i>	amāvimus,	{ <i>we loved.</i> <i>we have loved.</i>
2. amāvisti,	{ <i>you loved.</i> <i>you have loved.</i>	amāvistis,	{ <i>you loved.</i> <i>you have loved.</i>
3. amāvit,	{ <i>he loved.</i> <i>he has loved.</i>	amāvērunt or amāvēre,	{ <i>they loved.</i> <i>they have loved.</i>

Perfect Indicative of Sum.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
1. fui,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ was.} \\ I \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fuimus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} we \text{ were.} \\ we \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
2. fuisti,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$	fuistis,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} you \text{ were.} \\ you \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$
3. fuit,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} he \text{ was.} \\ he \text{ has been.} \end{array} \right.$	fuērunt or fuēre,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} they \text{ were.} \\ they \text{ have been.} \end{array} \right.$

1. Notice that the perfect stem of *amō* is the present stem + *v*. It may be found in any verb by dropping the final *i* of the first person of the perfect indicative active.

2. Observe that the endings of the perfect are the same for both *sum* and *amō*. Make a table of them, and commit to memory.

75.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Portābit, portāvit, portāvērunt. 2. Parāvī, parāvimus, parāvērunt. 3. Vocāvistī, vocāvistis, vocābitis. 4. Laudāvī, laudāvit, laudāvērunt. 5. Laudās, laudābās, laudābis. 6. Līberāvit, dedit, cēlāvit. 7. Dedistī, dedistis, culpāvī. 8. Vulnerābis, vulnerābās, vulnerāvit. 9. Vulnerāvī, vulnerāvērunt, vulnerāvistis. 10. Vāstāvit, parāvit, convocāvit.

II. 1. I was carrying, you were calling, he will tell. 2. He has carried, you called, he concealed. 3. I have given, you gave, it delighted. 4. I shall lay waste, I shall call, we shall tell. 5. He was carrying, he will carry, he has carried. 6. He was concealing, he has concealed, they concealed. 7. He praised, he has blamed, they have called. 8. You were preparing, you will carry, you will call. 9. They adorn, will adorn, have adorned. 10. He will wound, was wounding, is wounding.

76. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Agricola frumentum cum diligentia in oppidum portabat**, the farmer was carrying grain into the town with diligence.
2. **Agricola magna cum diligentia in oppidum frumentum portabat**, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.
3. **Agricola magna diligentia in oppidum frumentum portabat**, the farmer with great diligence was carrying grain into the town.

Observe that in the sentences *cum diligentia*, *magna cum diligentia*, and *magna diligentia*, show the manner of the act. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of manner*.

77. RULE. — *Manner is expressed by the ablative with cum, or a limiting adjective, or with both.*

Manner may also, as in English, be expressed by an adverb.

78. VOCABULARY.

caedēs , -is, <i>f.</i> , slaughter, murder.	occupō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize, take.
finis , -is, <i>m.</i> , end ; <i>pl.</i> , territory.	facit , he makes.
gladius , -i, <i>m.</i> , sword.	faciunt , they make.
hostis , -is, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , enemy.	libenter , <i>adv.</i> , gladly.
ignis , -is, <i>m.</i> , fire.	dē (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), about, of,
māter , -tris, <i>f.</i> , mother.	from.
labōrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, toil, labor.	cum (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), with.

79. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Miles gladiō hostem vulnerāvit. 2. Helvētīi nūntiōs dē iniuriis ad Caesarem mittunt. 3. Victor finem belli libenter facit.¹ 4. Caesar igne et gladiō finēs hosti-

¹ Makes gladly, *i.e.* is glad to make.

um vāstāvit. 5. Agricolaē māgnā cum dīlīgētiā labōrā-
vērunt. 6. Nōnne dīlīgētiā dīscipulōrum libenter
laudāvisti?¹ 7. Milītēs Caesaris māgnam hostium caedem
faciunt. 8. Graeci carmina Homēri laudābant. 9. Multa
Galliae oppida occupābimus. 10. Cōsul dē Galliā fābu-
lam nārrat. 11. Serva ad mātrem multa dōna portat ā
dominā. 12. Clāmōribus māgnis oppidum milītēs occu-
pāverunt.

II. 1. The boys run to the woods with a great shout.
2. Were the men of Britain large? 3. The maiden
called her sister by name. 4. I have decked the head
of my mother with a garland of roses. 5. The poems of
Homer delighted the Greeks. 6. Mothers like to adorn²
their children. 7. The trees in my father's garden are
large. 8. You will wound your companion with your
sword. 9. The wounds of the soldier were many.
10. The boy labors diligently³ in the field every day.



CHAPTER XV.

Third Declension: Stems in i. — Continued.

*First Conjugation, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indica-
tive Active; Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative
of Sum; Ablative of Accompaniment.*

80.

PARADIGMS.

	mare, n.,	animal, n.,
	sea.	animal.
Stem	mari-	animālī-

¹ See 3 and note 1. ² Compare 3 and 6, above. ³ I.e. with diligence.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	mare	maria	animal	animālia
<i>G.</i>	maris	marium	animālis	animālium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	mari	maribus	animāli	animālibus

Observe that the above nouns have *i* stems, and that the nominative is the same as the stem, except that the characteristic *i* has either been changed to *e*, as in *mare*, or dropped, as in *animal*.

81.

PARADIGMS.

Indicative Active of Amō.

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	amāveram, <i>I had loved.</i>	amāverāmus, <i>we had loved.</i>	
2.	amāverās, <i>you had loved.</i>	amāverātis, <i>you had loved.</i>	
3.	amāverat, <i>he had loved.</i>	amāverant, <i>they had loved.</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	amāverō, <i>I shall have loved.</i>	amāverimus, <i>we shall have loved.</i>
2.	amāveris, <i>you will have loved.</i>	amāveritis, <i>you will have loved.</i>
3.	amāverit, <i>he will have loved.</i>	amāverint, <i>they will have loved.</i>

Indicative of Sum.

	SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
1.	fueram, <i>I had been.</i>	fuerāmus, <i>we had been.</i>	
2.	fuerās, <i>you had been.</i>	fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i>	
3.	fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>	fuerant, <i>they had been.</i>	

FUTURE PERFECT.

1.	fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been.</i>
2.	fueris, <i>you will have been.</i>	fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i>
3.	fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>	fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i>

82.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus. 2. Cēlāvī, culpāvī, vocāvī, labōrāvī. 3. Vocāverat, vāstāverat, parāverat. 4. Portāverō, vāstāverō, occupāverō. 5. Cēlāverāsne? parāverāsne? ōrnāverāsne? 6. Cēlāvistīne pecūniam? 7. Līberāverat obsidēs. 8. Frūmentum parāverātis. 9. Sorōrem culpāverat. 10. Puerōs laudāverit. 11. Iūdex militem liberāvit. 12. Gladium hostis occupāverat.

II. 1. They had wounded, he had prepared. 2. He will have loved, they will have blamed. 3. I labor, I was laboring, I will labor. 4. I have labored, I had labored, I shall have labored. 5. He calls, he was calling, he will call. 6. He has called, he had called, he will have called. 7. The soldier had carried a javelin. 8. We had called together the children. 9. The fire had seized the town. 10. The gift will have delighted the boy. 11. They were preparing to take the town.

83.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Caesar in agrōs Titum cum equitibus mittit**, *Cæsar sends Titus with cavalry into the country-districts.*
2. **Galba cum patre in urbe labōrat**, *Galba works with his father in the city.*

Observe that *equitibus* denotes the persons by whom Titus is accompanied, and *patre* the person by whom Galba is accompanied. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of accompaniment*.

84. RULE. — *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

In military phrases *cum* is often omitted; as, **Caesar multis legiōnibus in Galliam properat**, *Cæsar hastens into Gaul with many legions.*

85.

VOCABULARY.

animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal.Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte.flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.iter, itineris, *n.*, march, route.legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.mare, -is, *n.*, sea.vectigal, -gālis, *n.*, tax.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry.

86.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. In mari sunt animālia multa et māgna. 2. Derantne Helvētīi Caesari vectigālia? 3. Caesar cum tertiā legiōne ad oppidum Bibracte properāvit. 4. Hostēs māgnīs itineribus ā silvis ad flūmen properāvērunt. 5. Gladiō et pilō, milītēs, cum Graecīs pūgnāvistis. 6. In carminibus Homērus fābulās dē bellō nārrāvit. 7. Libērī cum mātře in pulchrō hortō fuerant. 8. Pulchrae arborēs multōs hominēs dēlectant. 9. Cōsul cum multis mīlitibus ignī et gladiō finēs hostium vāstāverat. 10. Māgna fuerit caedēs hostium.

II. 1. The poet had carried his poems to (his) sister. 2. Cæsar makes a long march and takes the town Bibracte. 3. The soldiers had fought with the enemy, and had wounded many with (their) swords. 4. The boys were glad to labor (were gladly laboring) with (their) fathers in the fields. 5. The march to the river had been long. 6. The taxes of the Greeks will be small. 7. Have sailors always been glad to tell stories about the sea? 8. The legions hasten to the river with the cavalry, and put an end to the slaughter (make an end of the slaughter). 9. The soldiers fought in the river. 10. Cæsar will have laid waste the fields of the enemy with fire.

CHAPTER XVI.

Third Declension: Mixed Stems.¹*Ablative of Time.*

87.

PARADIGMS.

	nox, f., night.	urbs, f., city.	mōns, m., mountain.
Stem	noct-	urb-	mont-
SINGULAR.			
<i>N., V.</i>	nox	urbs	mōns
<i>G.</i>	noctis	urbis	montis
<i>D.</i>	nocti	urbī	monti
<i>Ac.</i>	noctem	urbem	montem
<i>Ab.</i>	nocte	urbe	monte
PLURAL.			
<i>N., V.</i>	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
<i>G.</i>	noctium	urbium	montium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
<i>Ac.</i>	noctēs -is	urbēs -is	montēs -is

Which class of nouns do these resemble in the singular?
In the plural?

Like these words are declined: 1. Most nouns in *-ns* and *-rs*; 2. Monosyllables in *-s* and *-x* preceded by a consonant.

¹ These were originally consonant stems, as given above, but in the plural they are declined like *i* stems.

88.**EXERCISES ON FORMS.**

I. 1. Vocābam, celābō, parāvi. 2. Portābis, dederās, occupāveris. 3. Properāsne ad flūmen? 4. Occupātisne, occupābātisne oppidum? 5. Pūgnābantne, dēlectābitne? 6. Hominēs liberāvimus, laudābimus. 7. Virgō rosīs sorōrem ōrnābat, ōrnāverat. 8. Ubi miles pilum celābit, celābat? 9. Quid puer ad mātrem portāverit, portāvit? 10. Cum Gallis pūgnāverit, pūgnāverat.

II. 1. We were calling, we shall hurry. 2. What were you calling? 3. Did not the master blame the slaves? 4. He fought with a sword, will fight. 5. We shall fight with the Greeks, he will fight. 6. He lovèd (his) children, had lovèd. 7. He will have praised the poem, you were praising. 8. Fine (beautiful) trees adorn, were adorning the garden. 9. The Greeks had paid (*dō*), were paying taxes. 10. We will call, have called a council.

89.**ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.**

1. **Hieme in urbe Mārcus labōrat**, *in the winter Marcus works in the city.*
2. **Legiō nocte oppidum occupāvit**, *the legion seized the town in the night.*
3. **Ūnā hōrā in urbe erō**, *within an hour I shall be in the city.*

Observe that *hieme* shows the time *when* Marcus works in the city, *nocte* the time *when* the town was seized, and *ūnā hōrā* the time *within which* I shall reach the city.

90. RULE. — *Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Time within which may also be expressed by **in** with the ablative.

91.

VOCABULARY.

aestās, -ātis, f., summer.**annus, -i, m.,** year.**dux, ducis, m.,** leader.**hiems, hiemis, f.,** winter.**hōra, -ae, f.,** hour.**mōns, montis, m.,** mountain.**nox, noctis, f.,** night.**pāx, pācis, f.,** peace.**urbs, urbis, f.,** city.**vigilia, -ae, f.,** (part of the night)

watch.

92.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux ex oppidō ad flūmen properāverat et cum hostibus pūgnāverat. 2. Tertiā vigiliā noctis Bibracte occupābāmus. 3. Māter Galbae erit in urbe hieme, nōn aestāte. 4. Dē tertiā vigiliā legiōnēs ex oppidō properāvērunt. 5. Num animālia ignem amant? 6. Flūmina in mare currunt. 7. Tertiā hōrā Caesar māgnam caedem hostium facit. 8. Tertiō annō belli cōsulibus vectīgālia dederātis. 9. Graeci libenter cum cōsule pācem faciunt. 10. Erant multae arborēs in montibus. 11. Militēs tertiae legiōnis gladiis et pilis pūgnābant.

II. 1. The leader of the soldiers makes peace with the Helvetians. 2. The farmers labored cheerfully in the summer. 3. The wearied soldiers had hastened by forced marches into the territory of the enemy, and had taken the town in the third watch of the night. 4. Winter on the mountain had not been agreeable. 5. We had fought at night with the Roman legions. 6. The faithful mother has called her tired children into the garden. 7. The men hastened to the sea in the third watch. 8. Man is an animal. 9. Galba did not seize the beautiful town, but laid waste the fields of the enemy. 10. The soldiers are laying waste the fields with fire.

CHAPTER XVII.

Third Declension.

Rules for Gender.

Make a complete table of the nominative endings of nouns of the third declension.

93. Gender. 1. Nouns in *-ō*, *-or*, *-ōs*, *-er*, and *-ēs*, increasing in the genitive, are masculine, except those in *-dō*, *-gō*, and abstract and collective nouns in *-iō*.

2. Nouns in *-ās*, *-ēs*, not increasing in the genitive, *-is*, *-ūs* (long), *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō* (abstract and collective), *-s* (following a consonant), *-x*, are feminine.

3. Nouns in *-a*, *-e*, *-i*, *-y*, *-c*, *-l*, *-n*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-us* (short), are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, and the learner should notice each when he first meets it.

These rules are subordinate to the general rule for gender. See 7.

94.

VOCABULARY.

explōrātor , <i>-ōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , scout.	palūs , <i>-ūdis</i> , <i>f.</i> , marsh, swamp.
lītus , <i>-oris</i> , <i>n.</i> , shore (of the sea).	pedes , peditis , <i>m.</i> (pēs , foot), foot-soldier.
mōs , mōris , <i>m.</i> , custom; <i>pl.</i> , manners, character.	dēliberō , <i>-āre</i> , <i>-āvi</i> , <i>-ātum</i> , consider, deliberate.
ōrdō , <i>-inis</i> , <i>m.</i> , rank, row, order.	per (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), through.

95.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Liberōs et matrēs in palūde cēlāverant.* 2. *Caesar cum hostium duce dē pāce dēliberābat.* 3. *Hieme militēs Caesaris saepe pūgnābant.* 4. *Militēs tertiæ legiōnis ad litus properāverant.* 5. *Nūntiū per hostium finēs in urbem currunt.* 6. *Dux dē tertiā vigiliā noctis ad montem explōrātōrēs mittit.* 7. *Magister dīscipulis dē mōribus Graecōrum nārrābat.* 8. *Explōrātōr dē tertiā vigiliā per ordinēs peditum ad flūmen properāvit.* 9. *Peditēs tertiā hōrā montem occupāverant.* 10. *Nocte in monte multōs ignēs habent militēs.*

II. 1. The commander will consult with the consul about the war. 2. The boys run through the woods to the shore. 3. He often hurries into the city about nine o'clock.¹ 4. They send the scouts in the night to the territory of the enemy. 5. The third legion had often fought with the Helvetians in the summer. 6. In the third year of the war we laid waste many towns and cities. 7. They had carried grain into the marshes to (their) horses. 8. The taxes of the Helvetians were small. 9. The mother frequently praises the good manners of (her) children. 10. The commander censures a foot-soldier of the third rank.

96.

VOCABULARY.

cohors, -tis, f., a cohort.
iūs, iūris, n., right, law.
pars, partis, f., part.
tempus, -oris, n., time.

decem, numeral adj., indecl.,
 ten.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, assist.
stō, stāre, steti, stātum, stand.

¹ As the Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise, about nine o'clock would be equivalent to about the third hour.

97.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar ā lītore ad urbem iter facit et militēs frūmentō iuvat. 2. Sunt in legiōne decem cohortēs. 3. Puer in itinere comitem iūverat. 4. Servus per palūdem ad mare currit. 5. Arborum ōrdō in lītore stābat. 6. Pācis temporibus bellum parāmus. 7. Dē iūre obsidum in conciliō dēliberābimus. 8. Pater filiō librum dē Graecōrum mōribus dedit. 9. Cōsul cum parte peditum Britanniam occupābit. 10. Dux cum decem cohortibus Graecōs iuvābat.

II. 1. The scout was telling about the customs of the Helvetians. 2. The horses were standing at (in) the end of a marsh. 3. In the third watch the commander sends a scout to the mountain. 4. Boys, do you like to stand on the seashore in summer? 5. Night puts an end to the journey. 6. Caesar had aided the Helvetians with grain. 7. In the third year of the war the Greeks make peace with the Romans. 8. They will consult about the rights of the victors. 9. At the seashore, winter is not a pleasant season (time of year), is it? 10. We shall set free a part of the hostages at nine o'clock.¹

¹ See 95. II. 3.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

First Conjugation, Present Indicative Passive; Ablative of Agent.

98. PARADIGMS.

acer, sharp.			celer, swift.		
Stem ācri-			celeri-		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N., V. ācer	ācris	ācre	celer	celeris	celere
G.	ācris			celeris	
D., Ab.	ācrī			celeri	
Ac. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	celerem	celerem	celere
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N., V. ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	celerēs	celerēs	celerīa
G.	ācrium			celerium ¹	
D., Ab.	ācribus			celeribus	
Ac. ācrēs(-īs)	ācrēs(-īs)	ācria	celerēs(-īs)	celerēs(-īs)	celerīa

1. These are called adjectives of three terminations, because in the nominative singular there is a different form for each gender.²

2. What change in the stem is seen in the nominative?

3. Decline together *mīles ācer*, *domina ācris*, *celer equus*.

99. Learn the conjugation of the present indicative passive of *amō* (p. 217). Make a table of terminations,

¹ *Celerum* is the usual genitive plural of *celer*.

² To this class belong only a few stems in *-ri*. These are all (except *celer*) declined like *ācer*.

and commit them to memory. Like *amō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *vocō*, *laudō*, *dēlectō*, and *vulnerō*.

100. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rēgīna Iūliam amat*, the queen loves Julia.
2. *Iūlia ā rēgīnā amātur*, Julia is loved by the queen.
3. *Titus ab amīcō amātur*, Titus is loved by his friend.

Observe that the first and second sentences have the same meaning, but that the verb of the first is in the active voice, and the verb of the second in the passive.

Observe that the agent—that is, the person who does the act—is expressed in the first by the nominative case, and in the second by the ablative with *ā*, and in the third by the ablative with *ab*.

101. RULE.—*The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

102. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Vocāmur*, culpāmur. 2. *Vulnerātur ā milite*. 3. *Vulnerātur pīlō*. 4. *Līberat servum*. 5. *Iuvantur ā patre*. 6. *Cīvēs ā cōnsule convocantur*. 7. *Ā sorōre laudātur*. 8. *Palūs arboribus cēlātur*. 9. *Frūmentum ex agrō ab agricolā portātur*. 10. *Saepe ā puerīs in hortum vocāris*.

II. 1. We are blamed, you are praised. 2. The mother adorns (her) daughter. 3. The girls are adorned by the mother. 4. The town is seized by the general. 5. The soldiers are wounded with stones. 6. The children are carried through the marsh. 7. The men are blamed by the judge. 8. We are assisted by (our) friends. 9. The fields are devastated by the conquerors. 10. The town is laid waste by fire.

103.

VOCABULARY.

celeritās, -ātis, f. , quickness, rapidity, swiftness.	nāvis, -is, f. (<i>like ignis</i>), ship.
civis, -is, m. (<i>like ignis</i>), citizen.	ācer, ācris, ācre , sharp, active.
imperātor, -ōris, m. , commander-in-chief, general.	celer, celeris, celere , quick, swift.
frāter, frātris, m. , brother.	accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum , accuse.
lēgātus, -ī, m. , lieutenant, ambassador.	

104.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ācer cōsul malōs civēs accūsāt. 2. Lēgātus māgnā celeritāte in finēs hostium iter facit et oppidum māgnū occupat. 3. Frāter imperātōris ā civibus accūsātur. 4. Mātrēs liberōs rosīs pulchrīs ōrant. 5. Urbs tertiā vigiliā noctis ā duce cohortium occupātur. 6. Nautae decem nāvibus celeribus frūmenta ad urbem portant. 7. Militēs, ab imperātore laudāmur. 8. Lēgātus cum imperātore dē iūre peditum dēliberāverat. 9. Vir ā comite gladiō vulnerātur. 10. Celerī nāvī ab imperātōris frātre in Britanniam portātur epistula.

II. 1. A beautiful book is given to the pupil by the master. 2. A great part of the city is concealed by the mountain. 3. The lieutenants are summoned to a council by the commander-in-chief. 4. In the summer of the third year of the war, the general consulted with the citizens about peace. 5. Many large animals were standing on the shore of the sea. 6. The active foot-soldiers by forced marches hurry to the consul. 7. Swift ships are given to Caesar by (his) friends. 8. In time of war women often assisted the farmers in the fields. 9. The boys were standing in a row at the end of the marsh. 10. Soldiers, we will quickly (with quickness) prepare to fight.

CHAPTER XIX.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.¹

*First Conjugation, Imperfect Indicative Passive;
Ablative of Cause.*

105.

PARADIGM.

brevis, short. Stem brevi-

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	brevis		breve	brevēs		brevia
<i>G.</i>		brevis			brevium	
<i>D., Ab.</i>		brevī			brevibus	
<i>Ac.</i>	brevem		breve	brevēs (-is)		brevia

106. Learn the conjugation of the imperfect indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

107.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Pater filium iuvābat. 2. Filius ā patre iuvābātur. 3. Princeps obsidēs liberāverat. 4. Ā Rōmānis urbs vāstābātur. 5. Accūsābāris ā cīvibus. 6. Gladiis ab hostibus (*it*) pūgnātur. 7. Lēgātī ab imperātōre accūsābantur. 8. Cēlābāmur in silvā ā duce. 9. Māter pueris fābulās brevēs nārrābat. 10. Fābulae brevēs ā mātrem nārrābantur.

¹ This class includes all *i* stems, except those of three terminations, and also the comparatives.

II. 1. I was calling, thou wast called. 2. We were praising, you were praised. 3. You were blamed, he was praised. 4. We were being assisted by (our) friends. 5. We were preparing war. 6. I was assisted by (my) brother. 7. The sailors were hurrying to the sea with shouts. 8. The women and children were concealed in the swamps. 9. A part of the cohorts was concealed by a row of trees. 10. In the night the city was seized.

108. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCE.

1. **Servī diligentīā ā dominō laudantur**, *the slaves are praised by their master for (because of) their diligence.*
2. **Militēs dēfessī itinere erant**, *the soldiers were weary with (on account of) their march.*

Observe that *diligentiā* shows the cause of the praising, and *itinere* the cause of the weariness, and that they are in the ablative case.

109. RULE. — *Cause may be expressed by the ablative, usually without a preposition.*

110. VOCABULARY.

castra , -ōrum, <i>n.</i> , camp.	superō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, sur-
multitūdō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , (multus),	pass, defeat.
multitude, great number.	brevis , -e, short.
populus , -i, <i>m.</i> , people.	fortis , -e, brave.
virtūs , -ūtis, <i>f.</i> , (vir), bravery,	gravis , -e, heavy.
virtue.	omnis , -e, all.
dolet , <i>he is pained</i> ; dolent , <i>they are pained.</i>	

111. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Peditēs omnēs virtūte ab imperātōre laudāban-**
- tur.** 2. **Militēs tertiæ legiōnis vulneribus multis dolent.**

3. Multitūdō peditum fortium māgnā cum celeritāte hostēs superābat. 4. Lapidēs gravēs ad urbem nāvibus portābantur. 5. Civēs ad castra properābant et cum imperātore dē iūre delīberābant. 6. Imperātor mōre populi Rōmānī Helvētiīs iter nōn dat. 7. Brevi tempore Caesar Helvētiōs superāverat. 8. Dux iniūriīs Graecōrum ā populō Rōmānō accūsābātur. 9. Gravi vulnere ad castra ā servō lēgātus portātur. 10. Nautae ācrēs erant laeti celeribus nāvibus.

II. 1. The messenger was praised by the citizens for his quickness. 2. The cohorts were aided by a large number of brave cavalrymen. 3. The journey from a part of Gaul to Britain is short. 4. The lieutenant with all the cohorts hastened to the camp in the night. 5. Has a legion ten cohorts? 6. Water was carried by the women to the weary soldiers. 7. The judge is pained by the wrongs of (his) brother. 8. A part of the third legion had defeated the Helvetians near the river. 9. The soldiers were standing in the camp. 10. The camp of the enemy was seized through the valor of the third cohort.

CHAPTER XX.

Adjectives of One Termination.¹

First Conjugation, Future Indicative Passive; Ablative of Specification.

112. PARADIGMS.

vêlôx, swift.			potêns, powerful.		
Stem vêlôc-			potent-		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	vêlôx			potêns	
<i>G.</i>	vêlôcis			potentis	
<i>D.</i>	vêlôcī			potentī	
<i>Ac. vêlôcem</i>		vêlôx	potentem		potêns
<i>Ab.</i>	vêlôcī (-e)			potentī (-e)	
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
<i>N., V. vêlôcēs</i>		vêlôcia	potentēs		potentia
<i>G.</i>	vêlôcium			potentium	
<i>D., Ab.</i>	vêlôcibus			potentibus	
<i>Ac. vêlôcēs (-is)</i>		vêlôcia	potentēs (-is)		potentia

1. What nouns do these adjectives resemble in their declension?

2. Why are they called adjectives of one termination?

3. Decline together *eques vêlôx, vêlôx equus, rēx potêns, rēgina potêns.*

113. Learn the conjugation of the future indicative passive of *amō*. Make a table of terminations, and commit them to memory.

¹ This class includes all consonant stems except the comparatives.

114.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Castra occupābantur, occupābuntur.* 2. *Vulnerābātis, vulnerābitis pilō.* 3. *Celeritās explorātorem iuvat, iuvābit.* 4. *Explorātor celeritāte laudābātur, laudābitur.* 5. *Ab amicis iuvāmur, iuvābimur.* 6. *Celerēs nāvēs parantur, parābuntur, parābantur.* 7. *Cum celeritāte urbs occupābātur, occupābitur.* 8. *Accūsābatur ab ācri lēgātō.* 9. *Virtūs fortium virōrum saepe laudātur.* 10. *Celer nūntius nōn culpābātur, culpābitur.* 11. *Superābāmur, superābimur ā Rōmānīs.*

II. 1. We shall assist, you will be assisted. 2. The citizen will be assisted by (his) brother. 3. The city was being seized, it will be seized by the general. 4. Soldiers, you will be praised for (your) valor. 5. In the summer we hurry, we shall hurry to the shore. 6. We were fighting, we shall fight with swords. 7. He is fighting, he was fighting with a foot-soldier. 8. You will be called to the city. 9. The citizens were being concealed, they will be concealed in the woods. 10. Where will the scout be concealed?

115.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rōmānī Helvētiōs virtūte superābant, the Romans surpassed the Helvetians in valor.*
2. *Nōmine fuit rēx, he was king in name.*

Observe that *virtūte* is used with *superābant* and defines its application; so also *nōmine* defines the application of *rēx*. The ablative thus used answers the question in *what respect*, and is called the *ablative of specification*.

116. RULE. — *The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application.*

117.

VOCABULARY.

ars, artis, *f.*, art.hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, culture.nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, character.vis, vīs, vī, vim, vī, *f.*, force;*pl.* vīrēs, vīrium, strength.

altus, -a, -um, high, deep.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, proper.

pār, paris, equal.

potēns, -entis, powerful.

vēlōx, -ōcis, swift.

que, *conj.*, *enclitic*, and.

118.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Helvētīi ā populō Rōmānō virtūte hūmānitāteque superābantur. 2. Brevī tempore mīlitēs ācrēs oppidum nōmine Bibracte occupant. 3. Imperātor et lēgātus sunt vīribus parēs. 4. Equī ducum vīribus celeritāteque fuērunt parēs. 5. Frāter arte, bonīs mōribus soror laudābitur. 6. Miles ā frātre hūmānitāte, nōn virtūte superābātur. 7. Iūdex ā cīvibus multis et potentibus accūsābitur. 8. Caesar multītūdine vēlōcium nāvium rēgem iuvābit. 9. Artem ducis, mīlitum virtūtem saepe laudāmus. 10. Litus est altum et aestāte ad castra nātūrā idōneum.

II. 1. The Romans were surpassed by the enemy in the large number of (their) men. 2. The mountain was not suitable by nature for a large town. 3. The brother of the active lieutenant was commander-in-chief in name. 4. The brave brothers are suffering on account of (their) wounds. 5. All the lieutenants will be summoned to a council in the third watch of the night. 6. The swift cavalry will hurry from the camp at the proper time. 7. The third legion will be praised for (its) swiftness and (its) valor. 8. The Greeks were surpassed by the Romans in the arts of war. 9. The valor and culture of the Greeks will be praised by all men. 10. The Romans were superior to (their) enemies in the quickness of their ships.

CHAPTER XXI.

First Conjugation.

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Passive;
Descriptive Ablative.*

119. Learn the conjugation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *amā*.

1. These tenses are formed by combining forms of the verb *sum* with the perfect passive participle *amātus*, -a, -um. They are, therefore, called *compound tenses*.

2. It will be observed that the neuter of the participle *amātus*, -a, -um, is exactly like the supine given as one of the principal parts of the verb.

3. The participle *amātus*, -a, -um, is declined like *bonus*, -a, -um, and agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Like *amā* conjugate the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *laudō*, *vocō*, *vulnerō*, and *liberō*.

120.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Servī liberātī sunt, liberātī erunt.* 2. *Cūstōs vulnerātus erat, vulnerātus est.* 3. *Cīvēs convocātī erunt, convocātī erant.* 4. *Castra rēgis vāstāta erant.* 5. *Vir-tūte ā populō laudātus es.* 6. *Nocte in silvā cēlātī sumus.* 7. *Dēlectāmur, dēlectābiminī urbe.* 8. *Celeritāte et vīribus nōn superābātur.* 9. *Rēgis patria ignī vāstāta est.* 10. *Ā potentibus cīvibus rēx accūsātus erat.* 11. *Vēlōx equus nūntiō parātus est.*

II. 1. He is called, he was blamed, he will be praised.
 2. He was called, he had been blamed, he will have been praised. 3. Titus was consul in name. 4. The commander-in-chief has been overcome. 5. The active horseman had been wounded. 6. We shall surpass the Greeks in culture. 7. The girls had been delighted with the poem. 8. Gaul had been seized by the enemy. 9. The javelins have been carried to the town. 10. Did you carry the javelins to the town? 11. We had been defeated in Britain. 12. He was not surpassed in strength. 13. The town has been taken by the lieutenant. 14. They were set free by the general. 15. The field had been laid waste with fire. 16. They have consulted with the chief.

121. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Iūlia est puella māgnā dīligentiā, Julia is a girl of great diligence.*
2. *Caesar erat māgnā virtūte, Caesar was a (man) of great valor.*
3. *Puerōs bonīs mōribus amō, I love boys of good character.*

Observe that *māgnā dīligentiā* modifies *puella*, that *māgnā virtūte* modifies *Caesar*, and that *bonīs mōribus* modifies *puerōs*. Observe, also, that these ablatives express a quality of the substantives which they modify. The ablative thus used is called the *ablative of quality*, or the *descriptive ablative*.

The ablative alone cannot be used to express quality, but must have an adjective in agreement with it, or a limiting genitive.

122. RULE. — *The ablative with an adjective may be used to express quality.*

123.

VOCABULARY.

adulēscēns, -entis, m., youth.	incrēdibīlis, -e, incredible.
Arlovistus, -ī, m., Ariovistus.	ingēns, -entis, huge, vast.
Germānus, -a, -um, German.	mūnītus, -a, -um, (perf. part. of mūnīō), fortified.
Germānus, -ī, m., a German.	primus, -a, -um, (sup. of prior), first.
corpus, -oris, n., body.	summus, -a, -um, (sup. of superus), very high, very great, top of.
māgnitūdō, -inis, f., size, magnitude.	
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack, storm.	

124.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Germānī primā vigiliā castra nātūrā et arte mūnīta oppūgnāvērunt. 2. Germānī erant ingentī māgnitūdine corporum et incrēdibīli virtūte. 3. Equitum multitudine et celeritāte hostēs ā Rōmānīs superāti sunt. 4. Adulēscēntem summā hūmānitāte lēgātum in Britanniam mittit. 5. Oppidum summā vī oppūgnātum est primā vigiliā. 6. Dux fortis incrēdibīli celeritāte ad montem properāverat et castra tertiāe legiōnis oppūgnāverat. 7. Urbs potēns bellō fuerat. 8. Corōna gravis data erat rēgīnae. 9. Puella māgnā diligētiā ā patre saepe laudāta est. 10. Imperātor idōneō tempore oppidum nātūrā mūnītum oppūgnābit.

II. 1. All men have been pleased by the skill of the great poet Homer. 2. The general, (a man) of great culture, is pained by the wounds of his soldiers. 3. The poet was a man of great diligence and culture. 4. Men of great valor have been called into camp. 5. The Romans were surpassed by the Germans in stature (size of bodies). 6. The scouts hastened with incredible swiftness to a high mountain. 7. In a short time all the

citizens will have been called into the city. 8. The leaders of the cohorts are equal in stature and bravery. 9. The soldiers of Ariovistus, king of the Germans, wounded the cavalry of Cæsar with stones. 10. Suitable gifts have been given to all the good servants.



CHAPTER XXII.

Comparison of Adjectives.

Declension of Comparatives; Ablative with Comparatives.

125. Adjectives have in Latin as in English three degrees of comparison, — the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

Comparison may be regular or irregular.

126. REGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear.</i>	cārīor, <i>dearer.</i>	cārīssimus, <i>dearest.</i>
brevīs (stem brevi-), <i>short.</i>	brevior, <i>shorter.</i>	brevīssimus, <i>shortest.</i>
vēlōx (stem vėlōc-), <i>swift.</i>	vėlōcior, <i>swifter.</i>	vėlōcīssimus, <i>swiftest.</i>
potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful.</i>	potentior, <i>more powerful.</i>	potentīssimus, <i>most powerful.</i>

Observe that the comparative is formed from the stem of the positive by dropping the stem-vowel, if there is

one, and adding *-ior*, and the superlative likewise by adding *-issimus*.¹

Compare *altus*, *longus*, *lātus*, *laetus*, *grātus*, *perītus*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

Declension of Comparatives.

127.

PARADIGM.

cārior, dearer. Stem *cārior*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>cārior</i>		<i>cārius</i>	<i>cāriōrēs</i>		<i>cāriōra</i>
<i>G.</i>		<i>cāriōris</i>			<i>cāriōrum</i>	
<i>D</i>		<i>cāriōri</i>			<i>cāriōribus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cāriōrem</i>		<i>cārius</i>	<i>cāriōrēs (-īs)</i>		<i>cāriōra</i>
<i>Ab.</i>		<i>cāriōre</i> or <i>-ī</i>			<i>cāriōribus</i>	

1. All comparatives are declined like *cārior*.
2. All superlatives are declined like *bonus*.
3. The comparative must sometimes be translated by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by *very*.

Bellum est longius, the war is rather long.

Bellum est longissimum, the war is very long.

128.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Rēx est potentior quam cōnsul, a king is more powerful than a consul.*
2. *Rēx est potentior cōnsule, a king is more powerful than a consul.*

In what case is *cōnsul*? Why?

¹ Some adjectives are not compared by adding terminations, but by using *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*; as, *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *māximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

Observe that the sentences have the same meaning, and that the ablative *cōnsule* is used instead of *quam cōsul*.

129. RULE. — *The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (than) is omitted.*

This ablative can only be used instead of a nominative or accusative.

130.

VOCABULARY.

altitūdō , -inis, <i>f.</i> (<i>altus</i>), height, depth.	perturbō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw into confusion, disturb greatly.
animus , -i, <i>m.</i> , mind, spirit.	apud (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), among, with, near.
Orgetorix , -igis, <i>m.</i> , Orgetorix.	{ āc (<i>before consonants</i>), atque (<i>before vowels and con-</i> <i>sonants</i>), and.
nōbīlis , -e, of high birth, famous, noble.	
circumdō , -āre, -dedī, -dātum, (<i>circum</i> , around, <i>and dō</i>), to put around, surround.	quam , <i>adv.</i> , than.

131.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Rēgēs semper fuērunt potentiōrēs cīvibus.
2. Iter ad altum montem est brevissimum. 3. Apud
Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. 4. Imperātor for-
tior erat milite. 5. Flūmen est māgnā altitūdine et ad
māgnās nāvēs idōneum. 6. Oppidum nātūrā mūnitum
flūmine māgnā altitūdine circumdatum est. 7. Ariovistus
et comes fuērunt parī māgnitūdine corporum. 8. Adu-
lēscētēs animō perturbātī sunt ingentī māgnitūdine
corporum et māgnā virtūte Germānōrum. 9. Pācis artēs
grātiōrēs sunt bellī artibus. 10. Imperātor fuit summā
virtūte atque hūmānitāte.

II. 1. Peace is more pleasant than war. 2. Seas are
deeper and wider than rivers. 3. The Romans, by the

shortest route, and with incredible rapidity, had hurried to the city and had surrounded (it) with soldiers. 4. Among the Germans, Ariovistus was the bravest and most powerful. 5. The violence (*vis*) of the enemy greatly disturbs the minds of the women and children. 6. The javelin of the Roman soldier was longer than his sword. 7. The lieutenant makes a very long journey in a severe (sharp) winter. 8. The cavalry are very swift and very brave. 9. The town was attacked by a youth of great valor. 10. The river is rather deep.



CHAPTER XXIII.

Comparison of Adjectives. — *Continued.**Partitive Genitive.*132. Adjectives in *-er*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched.</i>	miserior, -ius, <i>more wretched.</i>	miserrimus, -a, -um, <i>most wretched.</i>
2. celer (stem celeri-), <i>quick.</i>	celerior, -ius, <i>quicker.</i>	celerrimus, -a, -um, <i>quickest.</i>

Observe that the comparative of adjectives in *-er* is formed regularly, but that the superlative is formed by adding to the nominative singular masculine of the positive, *-rimus, -a, -um*.

Compare *liber, ācer, pulcher*.

133. Six adjectives in *-lis* form the superlative by adding *-lĭmus* to the stem minus the stem-vowel.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facilior.	facillĭmus.
difficilis, <i>difficult</i> .	difficilior.	difficillĭmus.
similis, <i>like</i> .	similior.	simillĭmus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike</i> .	dissimilior.	dissimillĭmus.
gracilis, <i>slender</i> .	gracilior.	gracillĭmus.
humilis, <i>low</i> .	humilior.	humillĭmus.

134. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- Equitum fortissimī in Galliam properābunt,** *the bravest of the cavalry will hurry into Gaul.*
- Decem obsidum liberātī sunt,** *ten of the hostages were set free.*
- Multi militum vulnerātī erant,** *many of the soldiers had been wounded.*

Observe that each word limited by the genitive in the examples denotes a part of the whole denoted by the genitive.

135. RULE. — *The partitive genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken.*

136. VOCABULARY.

locus, -ī, <i>m.</i> (<i>pl. loca, -ōrum</i> , <i>n.</i>), place.	facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .
mūrus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , wall.	difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .
nil, <i>n.</i> , <i>indeclinable</i> , nothing.	similis, -e, <i>like, similar</i> .
	dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> .

137. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Carmina Homēri pulcherrima sunt omnium Graecōrum carminum. 2. Aestāte in Britannīā nox est brevissima. 3. Mōrēs frātris et sorōris sunt dissimillimī.

4. Pueri liber est facillimus, viri difficillimus. 5. Nihil est grātius quam multitudō amicōrum. 6. Frātrēs et sorōrēs sunt mōribus simillimī. 7. Dux Rōmānōrum, nōbilis adulēscēns, summā (*depth of*) hieme oppidum Germānōrum oppūgnāvit. 8. Pars peditum in altissimō mūrō stat et in hostēs pīla ac lapidēs mittit. 9. Bre-vissimō tempore lēgātus locum altissimō mūrō circumdat. 10. Germānis fuit nihil hūmānitātis. 11. Adulēscēntem ingentī corporis māgnitūdine et summā virtūte ad Caesarem mittit.

II. 1. Many books are very easy, many very difficult. 2. Among the Romans the most powerful were not always (men) of the noblest birth. 3. The horses of Britain are very swift. 4. The farmer's black horse is swifter than the white (one). 5. Ariovistus was wounded in the foot. 6. Around¹ the consul there were always young men of great culture and good character. 7. They attack on (*ex*) all sides² with loud (great) shouts and throw the ranks into confusion. 8. A part of the soldiers of Orgetorix were attacked in a place very strongly fortified³ by nature. 9. The place was surrounded with a wall of great height. 10. In a very short time they will be attacked with incredible violence.

¹ apud.

² pars.

³ Superlative of mūnitus.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Irregular Comparison. — *Continued.**Ablative of Difference.*

138. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
exterus, <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer or more outward.</i>	extrēmus and extimus, <i>outermost or last.</i>
inferus, <i>low.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnfirmus and īmus, <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus and postumus, <i>last.</i>
superus, <i>upper.</i>	superior, <i>higher, superior.</i>	suprēmus and summus, <i>top of, highest.</i>

These adjectives are used mainly in the comparative and superlative.

139. The following are irregular throughout: —

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, <i>good.</i>	melior, melius, <i>better.</i>	optimus, <i>best.</i>
malus, <i>bad.</i>	pēior, pēius, <i>worse.</i>	pessimus, <i>worst.</i>
māgnus, <i>great.</i>	māior, māius, <i>greater.</i>	māximus, <i>greatest.</i>
multus, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs, ¹ <i>more.</i>	plūrimus, <i>most.</i>
multī, <i>many.</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more.</i>	plūrimī, <i>most.</i>
parvus, <i>small.</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller.</i>	minimus, <i>smallest.</i>
senex, <i>old.</i>	senior (māior nātū), <i>older, elder.</i>	māximus nātū, <i>oldest, eldest.</i>
iuvenis, <i>young.</i>	īūnior (minor nātū), <i>younger.</i>	minimus nātū, <i>youngest.</i>

¹ The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

140. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are apparently formed from adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i>).	prior, <i>former</i> .	primus, <i>first</i> .
prope (adv., <i>near</i>).	propior, <i>nearer</i> .	proximus, <i>nearest</i> .

141. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Pater capite māior est quam fīlius, the father is a head taller (larger by a head) than the son.*
2. *Titus decem annis senior est quam frāter, Titus is ten years older (older by ten years) than his brother.*
3. *Arbor decem pedibus altior est quam mūrus, the tree is ten feet higher (higher by ten feet) than the wall.*

An ablative like *capite*, *annis*, or *pedibus*, with comparatives and words of comparison, showing how much one thing differs from another, is called an *ablative of difference*.

142. RULE. — *The degree of difference is denoted by the ablative.*

143. VOCABULARY.

Allobrogēs, -um, <i>m.</i> , the Allobroges.	superus, -a, -um, upper.
Genāva, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Geneva.	exterus, -a, -um, outward, outer.
Lablēnus, -i, <i>m.</i> , Labienus.	extrēmus, -a, -um, furthest, extreme.
lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i> , light.	propior, -ius, nearer.
nātū, <i>m.</i> (<i>abl. of nātus</i>), in age.	proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
māior nātū (greater in age), older.	prior, -ius, former.
iuvenis, -e, young; <i>as a noun</i> , a young man.	senex, senis (<i>m. only</i>), old; <i>as a noun</i> , an old man.

144.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Iulia multis annis iunior quam frater est. 2. Filii optimorum patrum saepe pessimi sunt. 3. Malus est Orgetorix, peior frater. 4. Labienus decem annis est minor natu Caesare. 5. Extrimum oppidum Allobrogum est Genava. 6. Sorore Iulia est pede altior. 7. Summus mons prima luce a Labieno occupatus est. 8. Propior puerorum Labieni filius est. 9. Milites e loco superiore in hostes pila mittunt. 10. Caesar priore aestate Bibracte oppugnaverat. 11. Virtute atque humanitate Titus apud Graecos laudatus est. 12. Pax melior est quam bellum.

II. 1. The manners of the girls are better than (those) of the boys. 2. Men very unlike are often friends. 3. Part of the soldiers were much disturbed in the night by a great shouting. 4. Orgetorix surrounded the place with a very high wall. 5. The poems of Homer are not very difficult. 6. The first part of the journey was very easy, (but) the last more difficult. 7. The mother and (her) daughter are very unlike. 8. Is the valor of the soldier more pleasing than the diligence of the farmer? 9. Nothing delights everybody (*omnes*). 10. He was older than his brother, and more famous among the Helvetians.

CHAPTER XXV.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

145. ADJECTIVES.

ADVERBS.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. miser (stem misero-), <i>wretched</i> . | miserē, <i>wretchedly</i> . |
| cārus (stem cāro-), <i>dear</i> . | cārē, <i>dearly</i> . |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension are formed by dropping the final vowel of the stem and adding ē.¹

Form adverbs from grātus, laetus, pulcher.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 2. ācer (stem ācri-), <i>sharp</i> . | ācriter, <i>sharply</i> . |
| vēlōx (stem vēlōc-), <i>swift</i> . | vēlōciter, <i>swiftly</i> . |
| potēns (stem potent-), <i>powerful</i> . | potenter, <i>powerfully</i> . |

Observe that adverbs from adjectives of the third declension are formed by adding to the stem *-ter* or *-iter*. Stems ending in *nt* drop *t* before the addition.

3. Sometimes the neuter accusative and sometimes the ablative of the adjective is used as an adverb; as, multum, *much*; facile, *easily*; primō, *first*.

146. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārē, <i>dearly</i> .	cārius.	cārissimē.
celeriter, <i>quickly</i> .	celerius.	celerrimē.
vēlōciter, <i>swiftly</i> .	vēlōcius.	vēlōcissimē.

Observe that in the comparative the adverb is the same as the neuter of the adjective, and that the superlative of

¹ The adverbs from bonus and malus are formed irregularly, — benē, malē.

the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective regularly See 145. 1.

147.

VOCABULARY.

Belgae, -ārum, m., the Belgians.

causa, -ae, f., reason, cause;
abl. sing., for the sake of.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul.

proellum, -ī, n., battle.

ventus, -i, m., wind.

prō, prep. with the abl., before, in behalf of, for.

ācritēr, adv., sharply.

celeriter, adv., quickly.

facile, adv., easily.

fortiter, adv., bravely.

graviter, adv., deeply.

vēlōciter, adv., swiftly.

148.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ventī māgnitūdine minus vēlōciter currit nūntius. 2. Graviter hominēs ex malis līberōrum mōribus dolent. 3. Locus altissimō mūrō mūnitus ab Allobrogibus facile occupātus est. 4. Labiēnus ex castris properāvit et primā lūce Genāvam occupāvit. 5. Proximō proeliō Helvētiī in omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuērunt. 6. Iuvenēs sunt similēs nōmine, sed mōribus dissimilimī. 7. Multis dē causis Belgae sunt omnium Gallōrum fortissimī. 8. Caesar celeriter hostēs in fugam dat (*puts*). 9. Prō patriā omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnābunt. 10. Minor puerōrum celerius currit quam māior.

II. 1. The march was more difficult on account of a high (*māgnus*) wind. 2. All the Gauls fought bravely for (their) native land. 3. All the higher places had been seized by the Belgians. 4. He will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory (pl.) of the Belgians. 5. The Romans used to have longer swords than the Germans. 6. The brothers were very unlike. 7. Julia is a year younger than (her) brother. 8. Mothers are glad

to labor (gladly labor) for (their) children. 9. A horse runs more swiftly than a man. 10. Nothing easily threw Cæsar's legions into confusion.



CHAPTER XXVI.

Fourth or *u*-Declension.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

149.

PARADIGMS.

	exercitus, m., army.		cornū, n., horn.
	Stem exercitu-		Stem cornu-
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR. PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitui (ū)	exercitibus	cornū cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū cornibus

1. The stems of the fourth declension end in *-u*.
2. To find the stem, drop *um* of the genitive plural.
3. Make a table of terminations for both nouns.
4. GENDER. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in *-us* are almost all masculine ; in *-ū*, neuter.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

150. Learn the principal parts and present indicative active of *habere* (p. 220).

1. How do the terminations of the present tense differ from those of *amare* ?

2. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.

3. Verbs of the second conjugation may be recognized by the ending *-ēre* of the present infinitive active.

151.

VOCABULARY.

cornū, -ūs, <i>n.</i> , horn, wing (of an army).	doleō, -ēre, dolui, be pained, grieved. [hold, consider.
exercitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , army.	habēō -ēre, -ui, -itum, have,
impetus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , attack, violence.	moveō, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, move.
uxor, -ōris, <i>f.</i> , wife.	teneō, -ēre, -ui, tentum, hold.
cottidiānus, -a, -um, daily.	terreō, -ēre, -ui, territum, frighten.
dexter, -tra, -trum, right.	ferē, <i>adv.</i> , almost.

152.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus exercitum in castris tenet, et hostium dux dextrum cornū celeriter in superiorem locum movet. 2. Dextrum Allobrogum cornū ab hostibus superābatur. 3. Britannia est fortissimorum virorum patria. 4. Gallorum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae et ferē cottidiānis proeliis cum Germānis pūgnant. 5. Primō impetū Labiēnus exercitum hostium in fugam dat. 6. Ariovistus Caesarem nōn prō amicō sed prō hoste habet. 7. Genāva primā luce ā Caesare occupāta est. 8. Iuvenēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnābunt. 9. Uxōrem ex Helvētiis habet. 10. Properat in altiorem locum castra movēre. 11. Proximā nocte exercitum ex oppidō movet et primā luce dextrum Belgārum cornū ācritter oppūgnat.

II. 1. High winds do not easily frighten the sailors. 2. The year before¹ the place had been surrounded by a high wall. 3. The flight of the cavalry very much² dis-

¹ See 144. I. 10.

² very much = greatly.

turbs the mind of the commander-in-chief. 4. All the young men march swiftly in the night against the army of Labienus. 5. At daybreak they make a violent (sharp) attack upon the right wing. 6. The horsemen make almost daily attacks upon the army of Cæsar. 7. He quickly moves (his) camp from the territory of the Allobroges into the territory of the Helvetians. 8. The wrongs done to (wrongs of) the Roman people were the cause of the war. 9. The general is deeply pained by the flight of (his) army. 10. Labienus was ten years older than (his) wife. 11. The cavalry sharply attack a town in the most distant territories of the Gauls.



CHAPTER XXVII.

Second Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Dative with Adjectives.

153. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *habēō*.

Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō*, and observe that they differ only in the final vowel of the stem.

154. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- 1.** *Puella est cāra māt̄rī*, the girl is dear to her mother.
- 2.** *Helvētī proximi erant Germānī*, the Helvetians were nearest to the Germans.
- 3.** *Oppidum est urbī simile*, a town is like a city.

Observe that in each of these sentences the dative is dependent upon an adjective, and shows to what the quality denoted by the adjective applies.

155. RULE. — *Many adjectives take a dative to define their application.*

These are chiefly adjectives of fitness, nearness, likeness, friendliness, and their opposites.

156.**VOCABULARY.**

commeātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , supplies.	potestās, -ātis, <i>f.</i> , power.
cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , abundance; <i>in pl.</i> , (military) forces.	Vergilius, -i, <i>m.</i> , Virgil.
manus, -ūs, <i>f.</i> , hand, band.	novus, -a, -um, new.
memoria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , memory.	sinister, -tra, -trum, left.
portus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , harbor, port.	videō, -ēre, vidī, visum, see; <i>pass.</i> , seem.

157.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Omnia oppida Belgārum in Caesaris potestāte fuērunt. 2. Carmina Vergili, poētae Rōmānī, carminibus Homēri, poētae Graeci, similia sunt. 3. Locus castris nātūrā est idōneus. 4. Caesar novōs militēs in castris tenēbit. 5. Sinistrum exercitūs cornū ab hostibus superātum est. 6. Puella dextrā manū librum, sinistrā rosam tenēbat. 7. Caesaris exercitui nihil fuit difficile. 8. Primā lūce multae nāvēs longae in portū fuērunt. 9. Caesar iniuriās Helvētiōrum memoriā tenēbat. 10. Dux in summō monte cōpiās hostium vidēbit. 11. Cōpia commeātūs ex Galliā celeriter portābātur.

II. 1. The almost daily attacks of the Gauls frighten the recruits (new soldiers). 2. The sailor's wife was much disturbed by the violence of the wind. 3. The

memory of wrongs is often the cause of war. 4. The leader will be deeply pained by the flight of (his) forces. 5. The general will easily procure supplies suitable for all (his) army. 6. The Gauls fought bravely in defence of (their) native land. 7. He will quickly move (his) camp to a higher place. 8. The young man will see many ships in the harbors of Britain. 9. He has in the town a great abundance of grain. 10. At daybreak the Belgians violently attack (make an attack violently against) the left wing.



CHAPTER XXVIII.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative Active.

158. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative active of *habēō*.

What is the perfect stem of *habēō*? See 74. 1.

159. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Orgetorix commeātum habēbat, habēbit.* 2. *Clāmōre equum terrēbit, terruit.* 3. *Labiēnum dextrā manū, sinistrā Titum tenēbat.* 4. *Liberōs et uxōrēs Germānōrum explōrātor vidēbit, viderat.* 5. *Castra minōra vidēmus, vidimus.* 6. *Nihil iuvenēs terrēbit, terruit.* 7. *Ubi equitem celerem vidistī, viderās?* 8. *Summum montem primā lūce tenēbimus, tenēbāmus.* 9. *Iniuriās memoriā tenuerat, tenuerit.* 10. *Fuga equitum peditum animōs perturbābat.*

II. 1. We have supplies in the town. 2. The legion had a camp on the top of the mountain. 3. You will have a supply of grain. 4. The high wind was frightening the girls. 5. Where did you see a camp? 6. Was Dumnorix in Caesar's power? 7. They will see a large number of men. 8. They were moving (their) children from the city. 9. They moved (their) wives into the city. 10. The Belgians bravely attacked the camp.

160.

VOCABULARY.

āgmen, -inis, *n.*, column, troops (in motion); **novissimum āgmen**, the rear; **primum āgmen**, the van.
centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion.
Dumnorix, -igis, *m.*, Dumnorix.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, a setting.
Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhine.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
inferus, -a, -um, low.
propter, (*prep. with acc.*), on account of.

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (*cum and teneō*), to hold together, restrain, hem in.
pertineō, -ēre, -uī, (*per and teneō*), to hold through, extend.
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (*prō and habeō*), to hold off, hinder from, check.
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, (*sub and teneō*), to hold under, withstand, endure.

161.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar omnes cōpiās in castris continuit. 2. Dextrum cornū Belgārum impetūs exercitūs Rōmāni facile sustinuerat. 3. Occāsū sōlis ad concilium centuriōnēs omnium ōrdinum convocātī sunt. 4. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni pertinēbant. 5. Clāmor militum novissimum āgmen Belgārum terruerat. 6. Iūdicis uxor sinistrā manū carmina Vergili tenuit. 7. Propter māgnitudinem ventī omnēs ferē nāvēs in portū tenuerāmus. 8. Vidi-

stīne māgnam cōpiam nāvium longārum in portū?
 9. Equitibus cōpiās Dumnorigis commeātū prohibuimus.
 10. Imperātor ad locum castris nātūrā idōneum exercitum
 mōverit. 11. Habuistīne Dumnorigem in potestāte?
 12. Prīmum āgmen ab hōrā tertiā ad sōlis occāsum
 impetūs hostium sustinuit.

II. 1. The right wing was lower than the left.
 2. Dumnorix was not pleasing to Cæsar. 3. He will
 hold in memory the wrongs of (his) country. 4. We
 hastened with almost all (our) forces to the river and
 checked the van of the enemy. 5. The Belgians fought (in)
 almost daily battles with the Germans. 6. He kept the
 legion in camp on account of the wounds of the centurions.
 7. Cæsar easily hindered the Helvetians from (their)
 journey. 8. There had been a very large supply of grain
 in the town. 9. We had seen a harbor suitable for war-
 vessels. 10. Boys, did the territory of the Belgians extend
 to the river Rhine?



CHAPTER XXIX.

Second Conjugation: Present Indicative Passive.

Fifth or e-Declension.

162. Learn the present indicative passive of *habeō*.

1. Compare the endings with the corresponding endings of *amō*.

2. Like *habeō* conjugate the present indicative passive of *terreō*, *moveō*, and *videō*.

163. PARADIGM.

	<i>diēs, day.</i>		<i>rēs, thing.</i>	
	Stem <i>diē-</i>		Stem <i>rē-</i>	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

- How are the stems of these nouns found?
- Make a table of the terminations.
- Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of this declension which have all the cases of both numbers. The others are wanting in the plural wholly or in part.
- GENDER. — Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except *diēs*, which is usually masculine in the singular, always masculine in the plural.

164. VOCABULARY.

<i>aciēs, -ēi, f.,</i> line of battle.	<i>posterus, -a, -um,</i> following, after.
<i>diēs, -ēi, m.,</i> day.	
<i>Divitiacus, -i, m.,</i> Divitiacus.	<i>expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</i> take by storm.
<i>fidēs, -ei, f.,</i> confidence.	<i>incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,</i> urge on, arouse, incite.
<i>rēs, -ei, f.,</i> thing, affair.	
<i>pauci, -ae, -a,</i> few.	<i>valeō, -ēre, valui,</i> be strong.
<i>pedester, -tris, -tre,</i> of infantry, on foot.	

165. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Posterō diē exercitus in castris à Caesare continētur.* 2. *Divitiacō¹ Caesar māximam fidem habēbat.*

¹ Dative.

3. Vergilius optimus poētārum Rōmānōrum habētur. 4. Impetus hostium ā tertiā aciē sustinētur. 5. Multae rēs populum Rōmānum ad bellum incitābant. 6. Rōmāni pedestribus cōpiis plūrimum valēbant. 7. Oppidum et¹ nātūrā loci et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus expūgnātum est. 8. Memoria priōrum proeliōrum centuriōnēs dēlectābat. 9. Helvētiī flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō continentur. 10. Occāsū sōlis ā civibus in summō monte novissimum āgmen vidētur. 11. Commētūs² causā in finēs Allobrogum exercitus properāvit. 12. Peditēs ex inferiōre locō pīla in cōpiās hostium mittunt.

II. 1. A harbor suitable for war-vessels is seen by the scout. 2. The infantry are kept from the territories of the Belgians by an attack of the cavalry. 3. Slaves are in the power of (their) masters. 4. Is the pupil's book held in the left hand? 5. We soldiers are kept in camp on account of (our) wounds. 6. In the next summer the Gauls were aroused to war by a few chiefs. 7. The territory of the Belgians extends to the river Rhine. 8. A day is longer in summer than in winter. 9. Not all things are difficult. 10. The king is strong in the great number of (his) cavalry. 11. The line of battle was very long. 12. The town had been taken by storm in the first part of³ the summer. 13. I have the greatest confidence in (my) father.⁴

¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.

² The ablative causā, for the sake of, is used with the genitive, which regularly precedes it.

³ For first part of use primus agreeing with the word for summer.

⁴ See I. 2, note.

CHAPTER XXX.

Second Conjugation : Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive.*Nine Irregular Adjectives.*

166. Learn the imperfect and future indicative passive of *habeō*.

Like *habeō* conjugate the imperfect and future indicative passive of *moveō*, *teneō*, and *videō*.

167. The following adjectives, regular in the plural, end in *-ius* in the genitive singular, and in *-ī* in the dative singular.

<i>alius, other.</i>	<i>tōtus, whole.</i>	<i>alter, the other (of two).</i>
<i>nūllus, no, none.</i>	<i>ūllus, any.</i>	<i>neuter, neither (of two).</i>
<i>sōlus, alone.</i>	<i>ūnus, one.</i>	<i>ūter, which (of two).</i>

168.

PARADIGMS.

<i>alius, other.</i>			<i>ūnus, one.</i>		
Stem <i>allo-, alla-</i>			Stem <i>ūno-, ūna-</i>		
SINGULAR.					
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N. alius</i>	<i>alia</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>G. alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>alius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>	<i>ūnius</i>
<i>D. alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>alii</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>	<i>ūnī</i>
<i>Ac. alium</i>	<i>aliām</i>	<i>aliud</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>ūnam</i>	<i>ūnum</i>
<i>Ab. aliō</i>	<i>aliā</i>	<i>aliō</i>	<i>ūnō</i>	<i>ūnā</i>	<i>ūnō</i>

Alius has *d*, not *m*, in the neuter nominative and accusative singular. For *alius* (gen.) *alterius* is usual.

169.

VOCABULARY.

civitas, -atis, *f.*, state.Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura (mountains).lātītādō, -inis, *f.*, (lātus), width.Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, the Rhone.

alius, -a, -ud, other.

alter, -era, -erum, other (of two).

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, to fear.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides.

170.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continēbantur; unā ex parte, flūmine Rhodanō lātissimō; alterā ex parte, monte Iūrā altissimō. 2. Divitiacus sōlus ex omnī cīvitate Germānis liberōs obsidēs nōn dedit. 3. Propter māgnitūdinem silvārum et lātitudinem flūminum iter timēbat. 4. Multae rēs Orgetorigem ad aliud proelium incitābant. 5. Paucis diēbus oppidum ab hostibus tenēbitur. 6. Alii aliā rē¹ valent. 7. Centuriōnēs sōli posterō diē in concilium ā Caesare convocāti sunt. 8. Pedestria itinera ā nautis habēbantur difficillima. 9. Acies Rōmāna ā flūmine ad infimum² montem pertinēbat. 10. Facile erit commeātū hostēs prohibēre. 11. Imperātor centuriōnibus³ māximam fidem habēbat. 12. Tōtum āgmen unō tempore vidēbitur.

II. 1. On account of the height of the wall, he did not take the town by storm. 2. The attacks of the enemy were bravely endured by the whole line. 3. The cavalry make a violent (*acer*) attack on the Roman column. 4. He has great confidence in the whole army.³ 5. Some centurions were wounded on one day, others on another. 6. The camp will be moved to a higher place

¹ Others in another thing; i.e. Some in one thing, others in another.

² Lowest, lowest part of, base of.

³ See 165. I. 2.

in a few days. 7. In one hand he held a book, in the other a stone. 8. Cæsar with the third legion alone will storm the town. 9. The town is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains. 10. A place is being prepared for another band of Germans. 11. The whole state feared the name of Ariovistus.

171.

READING LESSON.

NOTE.—In the reading lessons, all words not previously given in the special vocabularies are translated in parentheses. This does not apply to numerals, which must be sought in Chapters XXXII. and XXXIII.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 1-4.]

Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs. Ūnius partis Belgae sunt incolae, alterius Aquitānī (*Aquitanians*), tertiæ Celtæ (*Celts*). Rōmānī Celtās Gallōs vocābant. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī erant Belgæ. Belgæ sæpe cum Germānis pūgnābant. Belgæ et Helvētīī proximī erant Germānis. Helvētīī ferē cottidiānis proeliis cum Germānis pūgnābant. Belgæ continēbantur marī, Rhēnō flūmine, Mātronā (*Marne*) et Sēquanā (*Seine*) flūminibus. Galli finibus Belgārum, Rhēnō et Rhodanō flūminibus, Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, marī continēbantur. Aquitānī ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs (*Pyrenees*) montēs et mare pertinēbant. Apud Helvētīōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorix. Helvētīī undique locī nātūrā continēbantur. In aliam partem Galliae iter facere (*to make*) parābant. Orgetorigem lēgātum ad aliōs Gallōs mīsērunt (*they sent*). In itinere Casticum (*Casticus*, a man's name) Sēquanum (*a Sequanian*) et Dumnorīgem Aeduum (*an Aeduan*) amīcōs facit. Dumnorīgī filiam dat uxōrem. Orgetorigī¹

¹ See 48 and 49.

in animō erat rēgnum (*royal power*) occupāre in Helvētiis. Casticus et Dumnorix Orgetorigem iuvābant. Rēs Helvētiis narrāta est et Orgetorix accusātus est. Servōs et amīcōs convocāvit. Per amīcōs et servōs liberātus est, sed paucīs diēbus post (*afterward*) mortuus est (*he died*).



CHAPTER XXXI.

Second Conjugation: Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.

172. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *habēō*.

For explanation in regard to these tenses, see 119. 1, 2, and 3.

173. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Corpore āc animō centuriō valēbat. 2. Titus corpore plūs valet quam animō. 3. Posterō diē castra moventur, movēbuntur. 4. Castra celeriter mōta sunt, mōta erant. 5. Pauci equitum ab explōrātōre vīsī sunt, vīsī erant. 6. Obsidēs in potestāte Caesaris tenēbantur, tenēbuntur. 7. Alii hostēs, aliī longitūdinem itineris timēbant, timuerant. 8. Ā cūstōde vidēberis, vīsus erās. 9. Flūminibus continēbimur, continēmur. 10. Legiōnēs in castris continēbantur, contentae sunt.

II. 1. The line of battle was extending, it will extend to the foot of (*in finis*) the mountain. 2. The attack had been sustained, it will be sustained. 3. Dumnorix alone

will be kept, he has been kept in Cæsar's power. 4. You had been seen, you have been seen by the soldier's wife. 5. We shall be seen, we shall have been seen in the city in a few days. 6. The judge is feared, he will be feared by the bad only. 7. The cavalry had been kept from the Rhone. 8. The state was incited, it will be incited to war by the slaughter of the citizens. 9. The town had been taken by storm the year before. 10. We will attack, we were attacking the left wing.

174.

VOCABULARY.

auctōritās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , influence, authority.	duo , two.
Bellovacī , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Bel- lovaci.	noster , -tra, -trum, our.
Casticus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Casticus.	obtineō , -ēre, -ui, -tentum, hold.
prōvincia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , province.	compleō , -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill, cover.
rēgnum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , kingdom, royal power.	inter (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), between, among.
Sēquanus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Sequanian.	omninō , <i>adv.</i> , altogether, in all.

175.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Helvētiīs erant omnīnō itinera duo; ūnum per Sēquanōs inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram.* 2. *Rēgnum in cīvitāte Sēquanōrum ā Castici patre obtentum est.* 3. *Tōtus mōns ā Caesare complētus est hominibus.* 4. *Orgetorigis auctōritās inter Helvētiōs nōn parva erat.* 5. *Pedestrēs cōpiās sōlās Sēquani timēbant.* 6. *Aliī in aliam partem equōs incitābant.* 7. *Plūrimum inter Belgās Bellovacōrum auctōritās et¹ virtūte et hominum multitudīne valēbat.* 8. *Cae-*

¹ Et . . . et, both . . . and.

sar tertiæ legiōnis militibus summam fidem habēbat.
 9. Rhodanus flūmen est inter finēs Helvētiōrum et
 Allobrogum. 10. Posterō diē nostra aciēs superiōrem
 locum obtinuit.

II. 1. The young man had few friends, the old man
 many. 2. Our soldiers quickly took the town by storm.
 3. Orgetorix did not seize the royal power in the Helve-
 tian state. 4. The whole camp had been filled with the
 enemy. 5. There was only one legion in Gaul. 6. The
 sons will be praised by (their) fathers for (their) diligence.
 7. Have you seen many large rivers? 8. Cæsar had con-
 fidence in the third legion only. 9. The town was
 bounded on one side by a stream of great width, on the
 other by a high mountain. 10. The judge is a man of
 great influence among our citizens.



CHAPTER XXXII.

Third Conjugation : Present Indicative Active.

Cardinal Numbers ; Accusative of Extent.

176. Learn from the vocabulary the principal parts
 of *dūcō*. What is the present stem? See 56. 1.

Verbs of the third conjugation may be recognized by
 the ending *-ere* of the present infinitive active.

177. Learn the present indicative active of *dūcō*
 (p. 223).

Notice that the stem-vowel *ē* is lost before *-ō*, becomes *ū* before *-nt*, and *ī* before other endings.

178. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum	30. trīgintā
2. duo, duae, duo	40. quadrāgintā
3. trēs, tria	50. quīnquāgintā
4. quattuor	60. sexāgintā
5. quīnque	70. septuāgintā
6. sex	80. octōgintā
7. septem	90. nōnāgintā
8. octō	100. centum
9. novem	101. centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus
10. decem	102. centum duo <i>or</i> centum et duo
11. ūndecim	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
12. duodecim	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
13. tredecim	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
14. quattuordecim	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
15. quīndecim	600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
16. sēdecim	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
17. septendecim	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	1000. mille
20. vigintī	2000. duo milia
21. vigintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vigintī	10,000. decem milia
22. vigintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vigintī	100,000. centum milia
28. duodētrīgintā	
29. ūndētrīgintā	

179. DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.

Cardinal numerals are indeclinable except *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, the hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* inclusive, and *milia*, the plural of *mille*. For the declension of *ūnus* see 168.

Duo and trēs are thus declined :—

180.

PARADIGMS.

duo, two.			trēs, three.		
Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Ac. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Ab. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

1. The hundreds, ducentī to nōgentī, are declined like the plural of bonus.

2. In the singular mille is generally an adjective, but the plural milia is always a noun of the neuter gender, declined like the neuter plural of trēs, and is followed by the partitive genitive; as, mille militēs, *a thousand soldiers*; but tria milia militum, *three thousand soldiers (three thousands of soldiers)*.

181.

ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Caesar paucōs diēs in oppidō exercitum continēbat,
Cæsar kept his army in the town for a few days.
2. Legionēs multōs annōs in Galliā fuerant, *the legions had been many years in Gaul.*
3. Flūmen est pedēs trēs altum, *the river is three feet deep.*
4. Puer sēscentōs passūs currit, *the boy runs six hundred paces.*

Observe that diēs and annōs denote duration of time, and are in the accusative case. They answer the question, *How long?* Observe, also, that pedēs and passūs denote extent of space, and are in the accusative. They answer the question, *How far?*

182. RULE. — *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

183.**VOCABULARY.**

longitūdō, -inis, f., length.

passus, -ūs, m., a pace.

quot, indeclinable adj., how many.

trēs, tria, three.

quattuor, four.

quinque, five.

sex, six.

vigintī, twenty.

quadrāgintā, forty.

sexāgintā, sixty.

octōgintā, eighty.

centum, one hundred.

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred.

mille, one thousand.

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run.

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, do ; bellum gerere, carry on war.

mittō, -ere, misi, missum, send.

184.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mēsa erat trēs pedēs longa, et duōs pedēs lāta.
2. Finēs Helvētiōrum in longitūdinem mīlia passuum centum et octōgintā pertinēbant. 3. Belgae cum Germānis multōs annōs bellum gerunt.¹ 4. Nostri² multās hōrās cum hostibus pūgnābant. 5. Quot diēs habet annus? Trecentōs et sexāgintā quīnque. 6. E prōvinciā in finēs Allobrogum quīnque legiōnēs lēgātus mittit. 7. Quot equitēs erant in castris? Equitum mīlia erant omnīnō sex. 8. Labiēnus tōtum diem iter facit, et occāsū sōlis oppidum mīlia passuum sex ā Belgis occupat. 9. Arbor in hortō sexāgintā pedēs alta est. 10. Divitiacus nostrā memoriā rēgnum māgnae partis Galliae obtinuit. 11. Lēgātus cum sōlā primā legiōne prōvinciam obtinēbit.

¹ English, *have been*, etc.

² See 51, foot-note.

II. 1. The forest is six miles long and four miles wide. 2. There were in the two armies forty-five thousand men. 3. How many hours were there in a day among the Romans? Twelve. 4. One seized the royal power in one state, another in another. 5. The route between the river Rhone and the Jura mountains was difficult. 6. The influence of Dumnorix among the Helvetians was greater than (that) of Divitiacus. 7. Cæsar held one mountain, the enemy the other. 8. The towns of the Sequanians were filled with our men. 9. How many miles does the city extend? 10. The army marches forty miles in two days.

185.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 5-9.]

Helvētiīs in animō erat per prōvinciam Rōmānam iter facere (*to make*). Frūmentum et multās aliās rēs in itinere portāre parābant. Duo omnīnō itinera erant: ūnum difficile, per Sēquanōrum finēs, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, alterum per prōvinciam Rōmānam, multō facilius. Allobrogēs ā Rōmānīs superātī erant. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum erat proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Cæsar summā celeritāte ad Genāvam legiōnem dūcit. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Cæsar Helvētiīs iter per prōvinciam nōn dat, sed legiōne aliisque militibus ad montem Iūram mīlia passuum decem novem mūrū in altitudinem pedum sēdecim dūcit, et Helvētiōs itinere prohibet. Helvētiī alterā viā (*road*) per Sēquanōs iter facere volēbant (*wished*) sed Sēquanī iter nōn dabant. Ad Dumnorigem Aeduum lēgātōs mittunt Helvētiī.

Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum valēbat auctōritāte et Helvētiis propter uxōrem amicus erat. Sēquanī Dumnorīgis auctoritāte mōti (*moved*) Helvētiis per finēs iter dant.



CHAPTER XXXIII.

Third Conjugation: Imperfect and Future Indicative Active.

Ordinal Numerals.

186. Learn the imperfect and future indicative active of *dūcō*.

Observe that the endings of the imperfect are the same as those of the first and second conjugations, while those of the future are different.

Write a table of future endings for the third conjugation, active voice, and commit to memory.

187. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. <i>primus</i>	11th. <i>ūndecimus</i>
2d. <i>secundus</i>	12th. <i>duodecimus</i>
3d. <i>tertius</i>	13th. <i>tertius decimus</i>
4th. <i>quārtus</i>	14th. <i>quārtus decimus</i>
5th. <i>quīntus</i>	15th. <i>quīntus decimus</i>
6th. <i>sextus</i>	16th. <i>sextus decimus</i>
7th. <i>septimus</i>	17th. <i>septimus decimus</i>
8th. <i>octāvus</i>	18th. <i>duodēvīcēsīmus</i>
9th. <i>nōnus</i>	19th. <i>ūndēvīcēsīmus</i>
10th. <i>decimus</i>	20th. <i>vīcēsīmus</i>

21st. vicēsimus primus <i>or</i> ūnus	60th. sexāgēsīmus
et vicēsimus	70th. septuāgēsīmus
28th. duodētricēsīmus	80th. octōgēsīmus
29th. ūndētricēsīmus	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
30th. tricēsīmus	100th. centēsīmus
40th. quadrāgēsīmus	200th. ducentēsīmus
50th. quinquāgēsīmus	1000th. millēsīmus

Ordinal numerals are declined like *bonus*.

188.

VOCABULARY.

adventus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , arrival, approach.	legō , -ere, lēgī, lēctum, gather, read.
Hannibal , -alis, <i>m.</i> , Hannibal.	scribō , -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write.
Italia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy.	quārtus , -a, -um, fourth.
manipulus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , a manipule.	quīntus , -a, -um, fifth.
certus , -a, -um, certain.	sextus , -a, -um, sixth.
Gallīcus , -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul.	decīmus , -a, -um, tenth.
dūcō , -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead.	vicēsīmus , -a, -um, twentieth.

189.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Puerī sextum dē Bellō Gallīcō librum legēbant.
2. Uxōrem dē adventū filiārum trium certiōrem¹ facit.
3. Vicēsīmus aciēī mīles pīlō vulnerātus est.
4. Duābus hōīs decem mīlia passuum nūntius curret.
5. Ā prōvinciā in finēs Belgārum vīgintī diēbus exercitum dūcit.
6. Quīntō bellī annō urbs ā Rōmānīs expūgnāta est.
7. Cohors decima pars legiōnis Rōmānae, manipulus tertia pars cohortis erat.
8. Peditum mīlia sex et equitum mīlia quattuor in proeliō pūgnāvērunt.
9. Scribētisne, puerī, epistulās ad patrēs? Scribēmus.
10. Hannibal māgnū exercitum in Italiā dūcit et multis proeliis

¹ *Certiōrem facit, makes more certain, i.e. informs.*

Rōmānōs superat. 11. Vigilia apud Rōmānōs quārta pars noctis erat. 12. Ducentōs quadrāgintā quattuor annōs rēgēs Rōmānōrum rēgnū obtinēbant. 13. In portū erant trecentae octōgintā nāvēs.

II. 1. We shall write many letters from the city to (our) friends. 2. A friend of the Roman people had for many years held the royal power among the Sequanians. 3. How many legions were (there) in our province? 4. (There) were in all in the state of the Belgians three legions and four cohorts. 5. We were reading about the arrival of Hannibal in Gaul. 6. The town was filled with cavalry and foot-soldiers. 7. Through the influence of Orgetorix, the Gauls were carrying on war with the Germans. 8. Our state extends in length two hundred miles, and in breadth one hundred. 9. On the fifth day at sunset he takes the town by storm. 10. On the fourteenth day the general will lead from Italy six cohorts of the second legion.



CHAPTER XXXIV.

Third Conjugation : Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.

Personal and Reflexive Pronouns.

190. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect tenses of the indicative active of *dūcō*. Compare the endings with those of the same tenses of *amō* and *habēō*.

191.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Multōs annōs Hannibal cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbat, gesserat. 2. Quot epistulās ūnō annō scribis, scripsisti? 3. Quattuor librōs dē Bellō Gallicō legēmus, lēgimus. 4. Equōs sexāgintā in castra mittēmus, mīsimus. 5. Centuriō manipulum dūcēbat, dūxerat. 6. Nūntius ūnō diē vīgintī mīlia passuum curret; cucurrit. 7. Peditēs pīla celeriter mittent, mīserint. 8. Nautae frūmentō nāvēs complent, complēvērunt. 9. Rēgnum in Sēquanīs ā Rōmānōrum amīcō obtinēbitur, obtinēbātur. 10. In prōvinciam cōpiās lēgātus dūcet, dūcēbat, dūxit.

II. 1. Our pupils have read, they will read many good books. 2. I have written to (my) father, I shall write. 3. Three hundred men were wounded, they had been wounded in the first battle. 4. How many books did you write, how many had you written? 5. The soldier will send many presents to (his) son, he has sent many. 6. I will lead the horse to the general. 7. On the fifth day the general was wounded, on the sixth the camp was stormed. 8. The boys will run, they were running very swiftly. 9. I will send (my) children to Italy, I have sent (them). 10. The ships will be filled, they had been filled with men.

Personal Pronouns.

192.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

N. egō, I.

G. mei, of me.

D. mihī (mī), to, for me.

PLURAL.

nōs, we.

nostrum or nostri, of us.

nōbis, to, for us.

SINGULAR.

Ac. *mē*, *me*.Ab. *mē*, *from, by, with, etc., me*.

PLURAL.

nōs, *us*.nōbīs, *from, by, with, etc., us*.

SECOND PERSON.

N., V. *tū*, (*thou*) *you*.G. *tui*, *of (thee) you*.D. *tibi*, *to, for (thee) you*.Ac. *tē*, (*thee*) *you*.Ab. *tē*, *from, by, with, etc., (thee) you*.vōs, *you*.vestrum or vestrī, *of you*.vōbīs, *to, for you*.vōs, *you*.vōbīs, *from, by, with, etc., you*.

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N. ———

G. *sui*, *of him(self), her(self), it(self)*.D. *sibi*, *to, for him(self), etc.*Ac. *sē*, *sēsē*, *him(self), etc.*Ab. *sē*, *sēsē*, *from, by, with, etc., him(self)*.sui, *of them(selves)*.sibi, *to, for them(selves)*.sē, *sēsē*, *them(selves)*.sē, *sēsē*, *from, by, with, etc., them(selves)*.

1. The reflexive regularly refers to the subject of the sentence; as, *Iūlia sē culpāt*, *Julia blames herself*. The place of the reflexive of the first and second person is supplied by the personal pronouns *ego*, *tū*, *nōs*, *vōs*; as, *Ego mē culpō*, *I blame myself*; *tū tē culpās*, *you blame yourself*.

2. The forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used chiefly as partitive genitives. See 135.

3. There are in Latin no special forms for the personal pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, and *they*. For the substitutes see 208. 1.

4. When used with personal and reflexive pronouns, the preposition *cum* is enclitic (see 4. 7); as, *mēcum*, *sēcum*, *vōbiscum*. So also with relative pronouns; as, *quōcum*, *quācum*, *quibuscum*.

193.

VOCABULARY.

Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero.
tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, storm, tempest, weather.

ego, I.

tū, thou.

sui, of himself, herself, itself.

iam, *adv.*, now, already.

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable,
 adverse; **adversae rēs**, adversity.

secundus, -a, -um, favorable.

secundae rēs, prosperity.

agō, -ere, **ēgi**, **āctum**, drive, do, act.

194.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego tertiā diēi hōrā epistolam scribēbam, tū carmina Homēri legēbās. 2. Iulia sē semper laudat, sed mē semper culpat. 3. Quot annōs habet Cornēlia? Quīnque annōs habet. 4. Lēgerat quattuor dē Bellō Gallicō librōs. 5. Silva sex milia passuum in lātitudinem pertinet. 6. Nōmina multōrum poētārum sunt cāra nōbis. 7. Adversa tempestās in litus nōs ēgerat. 8. Nūntius dē fugā Hannibalis fuit certus. 9. Multae nāvēs longae propter tempestātem in nostrum portum cucurrerant. 10. In rēbus secundis omnēs amīcōs habent. 11. Tibi dabō duōs pulcherrimōs librōs. Quid tū mihi dabis? 12. Pauci nostrōrum¹ impetum equitum sustinuērunt. 13. Ducem vōbiscum milia passuum decem mittēmus. 14. Hannibal iam multās Italiae civitatēs expūgnāverat. 15. Rēs adversae saepe fortium animōs terrent.

II. 1. The garden extends two hundred feet in length and one hundred in breadth. 2. He leads two maniples of the second cohort to the top of the mountain. 3. How many books do you read in a year? 4. You will read with me the first book of the Gallic War. 5. I shall read

¹ *Our (men).*

a good book, but you will write a letter to (your) mother. 6. He informs¹ me of the arrival of (my) father. 7. There was a river between the Romans and the camp of Hannibal. 8. On the fourteenth day we saw a wide river, and on the twentieth a very high mountain. 9. I am the fifth, you are the sixth. 10. Nothing is dearer to me than (my) country. 11. The tempest will drive many ships into the harbor.

195.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 10-12.]

Helvētiīs in animō erat per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum (*the Santōnes*) finēs facere. Santonēs proximī erant prōvinciae Rōmānae. Caesar ex Italiā quīnque legiōnēs in Galliam dūxit. In itinere cum montium incolīs pūgnābat. Caesaris adventū Helvētiī iam per Sēquanōrum finēs in Aeduōrum agrōs cōpiās dūxerant et Aeduōrum agrōs vāstābant. Aeduī et alii Rōmānōrum amīci ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsērunt. Caesar Aeduōs iuvāre et Helvētiōs superāre voluit (*wished*). Flūmen est Arar (*the Saône*) quod (*which*) per finēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit (*flows*). Helvētiī trēs iam partēs cōpiārum trāns (*across*) Ararim flūmen dūxerant, quārtam ferē partem nōn trādūxerant (*had led across*). Omnis civitātis Helvētiōrum quattuor partēs erant. Caesar in quārtam Helvētiōrum partem impetum facit. Multī occisi sunt (*were killed*); reliqui (*the rest*) fugae sē mandāvērunt (*gave up*).

¹ Cf. 189. I. 2.

CHAPTER XXXV.

Third Conjugation: Present and Imperfect
Passive.*Possessive Pronouns.*

196. Learn the present and imperfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

197. From the personal pronouns are formed the possessive pronouns.

<i>meus</i> , -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	<i>tuus</i> , -a, -um, <i>thy</i> .
<i>noster</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	<i>vester</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .
<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>his, her, their</i> .	

1. These are adjectives in construction and they are declined as regular adjectives of the first and second declension, except that the vocative singular masculine of *meus* is usually *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

2. *Suus*, like the personal pronoun from which it is formed, is reflexive.

3. Possession is denoted by the possessive pronouns, not by the genitive of the personal pronouns. *Puer suam matrem amat*, *the boy loves his mother*.

198.

VOCABULARY.

<i>ripa</i> , -ae, <i>f.</i> , bank.	<i>dividō</i> , -ere, <i>divīsi</i> , <i>divisum</i> , divide, separate.
<i>vicus</i> , -i, <i>m.</i> , village.	<i>expectō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wait for, expect.
<i>meus</i> , -a, -um, <i>my</i> .	<i>incolō</i> , -ere, -colui, live in, in- habit (<i>with acc.</i>).
<i>tuus</i> , -a, -um, <i>thy, your</i> .	<i>ante</i> (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), before.
<i>noster</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>our</i> .	
<i>vester</i> , -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> .	
<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> .	

199.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs novī in cohortēs dīviduntur.¹ 2. Explōrātor dē omnibus rēbus Caesarem cottidiē certiōrem facit. 3. Ante adventum vestrum, amīcī, quīntum dē Bellō Gallicō librum legēbam. 4. Rēbus in adversīs paucī, in secundīs multī hominibus amīcī sunt. 5. Primam lūcem in ripā flūminis exspectābam. 6. Ūnam partem Galliae incolunt Belgae, aliam Galli. 7. Tē et amīcum tuum in vicō exspectābit. 8. Duōs nūntiōs ad Hannibalem iam mīserat. 9. Epistula tua, mī fili,² multum mē dēlectāvit. 10. Summam suōrum³ virtūtem Caesar laudat. 11. Cicerō ad amīcōs multās epistulās scripsit. 12. Bellum cum multis civitatibus ab Hannibale gerēbātur. 13. Nāvis nostra in portum tempestāte agēbātur.

II. 1. The Allobroges used to live near the Roman province. 2. Your⁴ letter, brother, was very welcome to me. 3. A watch was the fourth part of a night. 4. The messenger informs Orgetorix of the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul. 5. The boy sees himself in the water. 6. The tenth legion was being led through our province. 7. We were reading with pleasure the poems of Virgil. 8. He was writing a letter to his sister before my arrival. 9. Our forces were being quickly led into the territory of the Sequanians. 10. I have few books; you have many. 11. We shall often be reading the fourth, fifth, and sixth hours of the day. 12. Our field is being divided by a wall into two parts.

¹ *Are being divided.*

² *Vocative.*

³ The possessive pronouns are used frequently agreeing with an omitted noun. Cf. 194. I. 12.

⁴ From this point the possessive pronouns in the English exercises will not be in parenthesis. They need not be expressed in Latin unless emphatic or unless the sense would be doubtful without them.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

**Third Conjugation: Future, Perfect, Pluperfect,
and Future-Perfect Indicative Passive.**

200. Learn the future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative passive of *dūcō*.

Observe that the last three tenses do not differ in form from the same tenses of the first and second conjugations.

201. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Dividitur, divīsum est. 2. Scribunt, scribēbant. 3. Mittitur, mittētur, mittuntur. 4. Agitur, agēbātur. 5. Legunt, legent, lēgerunt. 6. Urbs in sex partēs divīdētur. 7. Carmina scribentur. 8. Ab amīcō epistula missa est. 9. Nāvis in litus ācta est. 10. In ripā Rhodanī vōs exspectābāmus. 11. Liber ab omnibus legētur. 12. Milia passuum duo cucurrimus. 13. In vicō puerī vīsī sunt. 14. Paucīs diēbus in urbem mittentur. 15. Tōtū diem in castrīs contentī erāmus.

II. 1. We shall be separated, we have been separated. 2. It will be driven, it was being driven. 3. We were standing, we had stood. 4. They will be led, they were being led. 5. We shall be kept, they were kept. 6. They had been separated by a wall. 7. We will wait for your coming. 8. The ship was driven from the shore by the storm. 9. The field will be divided into two parts. 10. The poem has been read by my sister. 11. The troops will be led into Gaul. 12. We shall stand on the bank of the river.

202.

VOCABULARY.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, (dē + dūcō, lead from,) lead away, withdraw (<i>with dir.</i> <i>obj.</i>).	pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de- mand.
discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, withdraw (= go away).	hīberna, -ōrum, <i>n.</i> , winter quar- labor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , labor. [ters.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain. [seek.	muller, -eris, <i>f.</i> , woman.
petō, -ere, -ivī or -īī, -itum, ask,	regiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , district, region.
	salūs, -ūtis, <i>f.</i> , safety.
	mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe.
	mātūrē, <i>adv.</i> , early.

203.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. 2. Apud Rōmānōs diēs in duodecim hōrās, nox in quattuor vigiliās dīvisa erat. 3. Caesar mātūrius quam tempus annī pōstulābat in hīberna exercitum dēdūxit. 4. Ante hiemem exercitus noster in hīberna dēductus erit. 5. Paucōs diēs amīcī meī in urbe manēbunt. 6. Diēs nobīs ad labōrem datur. 7. Paucī hostium fugā salūtem sibi petiērunt. 8. Lēgātus exercitum in aliam regiōnem dēdūxerat. 9. Vigintī diēbus ante¹ frūmentum in meō agrō nōn fuit mātūrum. 10. Bonus cīvis suā salūte patriam cāriōrem habēbit. 11. Cōpia primā lūce ā ripā Rhodanī discēssērunt. 12. Gravissimum labōrem propter liberōs suōs saepe sustinent mulierēs. 13. Liberōs obsidēs ā Gallīs pōstulāvit Ariovistus.

II. 1. Our city is divided into ten wards (*regiō*). 2. Our affairs are dear to us, yours to you. 3. Your prosperity will always delight me. 4. A swift messenger had been sent by the shortest route to the winter quarters of Labienus. 5. Storms kept us in the village

¹ Before by twenty days; twenty days ago. Ante is an adverb here.

many days. 6. My son often asks me for money.¹
 7. Did Germans use to live on the island of Britain?
 8. I had already waited for you two hours. 9. We remained in port on account of the violence of the storm.
 10. The ship was driven swiftly through the water.
 11. You were friendly² to us in adversity. 12. The young man had withdrawn from the army on account of a wound.

204.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 13-15.]

Ūnam partem Helvētiōrum Caesar iam superāverat. Cōpiās suās celeriter trāns (*across*) Ararim (acc. of *Arar*) dūxit contrā (*against*) aliās trēs partēs. Helvētiī ad Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt. Princeps lēgātōrum, Diviciō (*Divico*, a man's name), cum Caesare ēgit (*treated*, i.e. *talked*): "Pācem petimus ā tē. Sī (*if*) pācem faciēs (*will make*), ibimus (*will go*) in eam (*that*) partem atque ibi (*there*) erimus ubi nōs cōstitueris (*settle*, fut. perf. of *cōstituō*); sīn (*but if*) bellum nōbiscum gerēs, tē superābimus, et locus ubi sumus ex calamitāte (*the misfortune*) populī Rōmānī nōmen habēbit." Caesar respondit (*replied*): "Sī (*if*) obsidēs mihi dabitis et sī Aeduis et Allobrogibus satisfaciētis (*give satisfaction*), pāx erit." Diviciō respondit, "Helvētiī obsidēs nōn dabunt," et discēssit. Posterō diē Helvētiī castra movent. Caesaris equitēs cum Helvētiīs pūgnant et superantur. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat et hostēs ā populātiōnibus (*devastations*) prohibēbat. Diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt (perf. of *faciō*).

¹ For the case of the thing asked for, and the person from whom it is asked with *petere*, see I. 1, above.

² I.e. friends.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

205.

PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.					
	hic, this.			ille, that.	
N. hic	haec	hōc	ille	illa	illud
G. huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
D. huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Ac. hunc	hanc	hōc	illum	illam	illud
Ab. hōc	hōc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
PLURAL.					
N. hi	hae	haec	illi	illae	illa
G. hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. his	his	his	illis	illis	illis
Ac. hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. his	his	his	illis	illis	illis

1. *Hic* refers to that which is near the speaker and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: *hic puer, this boy.*

2. *Iste, that (of yours)*, is declined like *ille*. It is applied to that which is near or has some connection with the person addressed, and so is called the *demonstrative of the second person*: *iste puer, that boy of yours.*

3. *Ille* is applied to what is more remote, and so is called the *demonstrative of the third person*: *ille puer, that boy.*

4. When *hic* and *ille* are contrasted, *hic* usually means *the latter*, and *ille* *the former*.

Ille agreeing with a noun frequently means *well-known*.

206.

VOCABULARY.

Aedui , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , the Aeduians.	ille , <i>illa</i> , <i>illud</i> , that.
initium , -ī, <i>n.</i> , beginning.	iste , <i>ista</i> , <i>istud</i> , that (of yours).
nēmō , -inis, <i>m.</i> , nobody.	clārus , -a, -um, eminent.
ōrātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , speech, oration.	militāris , -e, military.
signum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , standard, sign.	dicō , -ere, <i>dixī</i> , <i>dictum</i> , say.
hic , <i>haec</i> , <i>hōc</i> , this.	cūr , <i>adv.</i> , why?

207.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ego et amīcī meī hōc vicō delectāmur. 2. Hic paucōs diēs in urbe manēbit, ille in lītus properābit. 3. Iste liber est pulcherrimus. 4. Vergilius et Caesar clārī Rōmānī fuērunt; ille poēta, hic perītus rei¹ militāris fuit. 5. Aquilae erant signa militāria legiōnum Rōmānārum. 6. Hannibal cum cōpiis suis ex illā regiōne iam discēsserat. 7. Nēmō libentius tē videt quam ego. 8. Initiō ōrātiōnis multa dē virtūte cīvium nostrōrum Cicerō dixit. 9. Agricola ante lūcem initium labōris saepe facit. 10. Cūr lēgātus mātūrius² in hīberna cōpiās suās dēdūxit? 11. Nēmō omnium cīvium nostrōrum clārrior est illō virō.

II. 1. These children asked their father for a new book. 2. This boy is two years younger than that (one). 3. The winter quarters of our two legions were separated by a marsh. 4. We were waiting for you in the village all day. 5. Men used to live in villages for the sake of safety. 6. The Helvetians demanded the noblest of the Æduans as hostages. 7. The bank of the river was covered (filled) with large trees. 8. Why had the

¹ *Perītus* and many other adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning.

² See 127. 3.

forces of Labienus been led away to their winter quarters unusually¹ early that year? 9. The grain in your fields will be ripe in a few days. 10. We saw the eagle of the tenth legion among the military standards. 11. Those boys of yours say many things about themselves. 12. These women do not ask the enemy for peace.



CHAPTER XXXVIII.

Demonstrative Pronouns. — *Continued.*

208.

PARADIGMS.

is, this, that.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
<i>N. is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ei (ī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>G. ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>D. ei</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eis (iis)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>
<i>Ac. eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Ab. eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>

idem, same.

<i>N. idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>(īidem)</i> <i>eaedem</i> <i>eadem</i>		
<i>G. ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>ēiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D. eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem (iīdem)</i>		
<i>Ac. eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Ab. eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīdem (iīdem)</i>		

¹ Compare I. 10, above.

ipse, self.					
	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipso	ipsā	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

1. Is is sometimes used as the personal pronoun of the third person, and then means *he, she, it*.

2. Ipse, the intensive pronoun, is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun expressed or understood with which it agrees as an adjective. The reflexive pronoun *sē, self*, is always used substantively. The following sentences will illustrate the use of the two.

1. Miles *sē* laudat, *the soldier praises himself*.
2. Miles ipse laudatus est, *the soldier himself was praised*.
3. Ipse manēbō, *I myself will remain*.
4. Mulier epistolam ipsam legit, *the woman reads the letter itself, or, the very letter*.

209.

VOCABULARY.

committō, -ere, -misi, -missum,	idem, eadem, idem, same.
(con and mittō), entrust;	ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self.
committere proelium, en-	is, ea, id, that, this.
gage in battle.	barbarus, -i, m., barbarian.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendi, -fensum,	diū, adv., long, a long time.
protect, defend.	tam, adv., so.
domus, -ūs and -ī, f., house, home.	

210.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hostēs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt, pācemque ab eō petunt. 2. Centuriō salutem suam explōrātōribus

Gallōrum commisit. 3. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movē, idem Caesar facit. 4. Cūr Cicerō ipse suās orātiōnēs tam saepe laudāvit? 5. Titum et frātreē eius obsidēs dux Helvētiōrum pōstulāverat. 6. Nōne tū ipse et frāter tuus in urbe mēcum paucōs diēs manēbitis? 7. Caesar et Labiēnus in eundem locum properāverant et ūnō tempore proelium cum Belgīs commiserant. 8. Lēgātus ipse peritissimus rei militāris habitus est. 9. Rōmānī ab iniuriā barbarōrum patriam diū dēfendērunt. 10. Hī barbarī ab impetū hostium domōs suās acriter dēfendunt. 11. Mihi mea domus, tibi tua est cāra. 12. Initium hūius libri est facilius quam extrēma pars.

II. 1. The Belgians and the Helvetians did not live in the same part of Gaul. 2. That speech of yours was pleasing to many citizens. 3. The army will be led away from the winter quarters in a few days. 4. We saw that man in the city. 5. Cicero had great influence in those regions. 6. No one of this legion withdrew from the standards. 7. Why do you remain so long in this city? 8. These boys will assist their father in his daily toil. 9. The general himself and many of his men (soldiers) were wounded. 10. We had expected the ambassador and his son a long time. 11. Many illustrious men have lived in this city. 12. Why do you say these things to me?

211.

READING LESSON.

[Caesar, *Gallie War*, I. 16, 17.]

Caesaris cōpiaē frūmentum nōn habēbant. Aedui id nōn dabant, nam (*for*) propter tempus annī frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant. Aedui cottidiē dīcebant "frūmentum dabimus," sed nōn dabant. Propter hōc irātus

(*being angry*) Caesar principēs eōrum convocāvit et graviter eōs accūsāvit. Liscus (*a man's name*), princeps Aeduōrum, Caesari dixit: "Civium Aeduōrum nōnnūllī (*some*) auctōritāte plūs valent quam ipsī principēs. Hi malā orātiōne multitudinem dēterrent (*deter*) nē (*that not*) frumentum dent (*give*, subjunctive of *dō*).¹ Hi dicunt: 'si (*if*) Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāverint, Aeduīs² et omnibus Gallis² libertātem (*liberty*) ēripiēnt (*will take away*).' Ab eīsdem vestra cōnsilia (*plans*) hostibus ēnūntiantur (*are reported*). Hās rēs māgnō cum periculō (*danger*) tibi ēnūntiō, et ob (*on account of, for*) eam causam diū tacuī (*kept silent*)."



CHAPTER XXXIX.

Fourth Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.

Relative Pronoun.

212. Learn the present indicative active of *audiō* (p. 226).

213.

PARADIGM.

	SINGULAR.			quī, who, which.	PLURAL.		
N.	quī	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae	
G.	cūlus	cūlus	cūlus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	

¹ nē . . . dent, *that they give not*, i.e. *from giving*.

² Dative, but translate *from*.

214. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Ego quī haec scripsī homō sum, I who wrote this am a man.*
2. *Urbs quam vidēs māgna est, the city which you see is large.*
3. *Puerī quōs vidētis discipulī meī sunt, the boys whom you see are my pupils.*

Observe that the relative has the same gender, number, and person as the word (called the antecedent) to which it refers, but that its case is determined by its relation to the other words of the clause in which it stands. *Qui* in the first sentence, while it has no separate form to show its person, is nevertheless of the first person, and so the verb which agrees with it is in the first person.

215. RULE. — *A relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person.*

216. VOCABULARY.

vōx, *vōcis*, *f.*, voice.

reliquus, *-a*, *-um*, remaining,
rest of.

audiō, *-ire*, *-ivī*, *-itum*, hear.

hiemō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, spend
the winter.

mūniō, *-ire*, *-ivī*, *-itum*, fortify.

veniō, *-ire*, *vēnī*, *ventum*,
come.

quī, *quae*, *quod*, who, which.

quam, *adv.*, as; *tam . . . quam*,
so . . . as.

217. EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Nōn is bonus est quī sē ipse laudat, sed is quem optimī hominēs laudant.* 2. *Dux, quī hiemāverat in Italiā, primā aestāte in Britanniam vēnit.* 3. *Locum ubi hiemābit exercitus noster mūnimus.* 4. *Libenter vōcem meī amīcī Mārcī semper audiō.* 5. *Helvētīī eō tempore quō Caesar in Galliam vēnit ad flūmen Rhēnum incolēbant.*

6. Nēmō rei militāris peritior quam Hannibal fuit. 7. Domus amicōrum quibuscum¹ hiemō multis pictūris ornātur. 8. Ea pars Galliae quam Belgae obtinent a finibus Gallōrum ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī pertinet. 9. Quī a multis timētur, ipse multōs timēbit. 10. Nōne audis ea quae dicō? 11. Initium itineris nōn est tam difficile quam reliqua pars.

II. 1. The same things are not easy for all men. 2. Many barbarians used to live in this region where we are. 3. I shall read with pleasure the orations which you gave me. 4. Those soldiers of yours always engage in battle bravely. 5. Cicero in the oration which I am reading, praises himself. 6. These barbarians are very skilful in the art of war. 7. The Roman legions used to defend their standards with the utmost valor. 8. The beginning of the book which I gave you is easy. 9. Dumnorix and his cavalry begin² the battle. 10. Shall you remain long in Greece? 11. The winter quarters which the legion is fortifying are in the territory of the Sequanians.

¹ See 192. 4, at the end.

² *Make a beginning of.*

CHAPTER XL.

**Fourth Conjugation : Imperfect, Future, Perfect,
Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect****Indicative Active.***Interrogative Pronoun.*

218. Learn the imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect of the indicative active of *audiō*.

Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of *dīcō*.

In what tenses is there a difference? In what does the difference consist?

219. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Audit, audiēbat, audiet.* 2. *Vēnit, vēnerat, vēnerit.* 3. *Audivī, audiveram, audiverō.* 4. *Mūnit, mūniet, mūnivit.* 5. *Barbarus in Italiam vēnit.* 6. *Vōcemne audīs?* 7. *Lēgātus mūrō hiberna mūniet.* 8. *Eadem audivērunt.* 9. *Quō diē veniētis?* 10. *Quid dīcis, dīcēs, dīxistī?*

II. 1. You hear, you were hearing. 2. They will fortify, they have fortified. 3. We were coming, we had come. 4. He will protect, he has protected. 5. Whose voice do you hear? 6. The soldiers will fortify this place. 7. They will come to the city. 8. Whose speech did they hear? 9. We will defend our home. 10. They are coming from the winter quarters.

*Interrogative Pronoun.***220.****PARADIGM.***quis, who ? which ? what ?*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

When the interrogative is used as an adjective, it usually has the same form as the relative.

221.**VOCABULARY.**

genus, -eris, n., kind, sort.
mercātor, -ōris, m., merchant.
numerus, -ī, m., number.
senātus, -ūs, m., senate.
quis, quae, quid, who, what.
pūblicus, -a, -um, public.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call.
considō, -ere, -sēdi, -sēssum,
 take a position, encamp.
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum,
 (*dis and mittō*), send away,
 dismiss.

222.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Mille cīvēs vōcem cōnsulis audiebant. 2. Quid ex tuō frātre dē adventū Germānōrum audivistī? 3. In Graeciā et in Italiā urbēs multae et nōbiles sunt. 4. Caesar tertiāe legiōni salutem suam commisit. 5. Quibus ex regiōnibus ei mercātōrēs vērunt? 6. Quae arborum genera in pūblicis hortis vidisti? 7. Nūntiī ā senātū in multās regiōnēs dīmissi sunt. 8. Homīnēs quī Belgae appellābantur, ūnam Galliae partem incolēbant. 9. Cum tribus legiōnibus et māgnō equitum numerō proelium commisit. 10. Ubi hostium cōpiaē consēderunt? 11. Cas-

ticus, cuius pater amicus populi Rōmānī fuerat, rēgnum in suā civitatē occupābat. 12. Ego in Graeciā reliquam hiemis partem manēbō.

II. 1. Who of you will read Cicero's orations? 2. The same storm which kept us in port drove many ships upon the shore. 3. We will come into the city by the shortest route. 4. Marcus will be glad to hear the voice of his friend. 5. That little girl whose voice you hear is very unhappy. 6. In what district do they live? 7. What towns have the enemy fortified? 8. The Gauls were called barbarians by the Romans. 9. The home of that merchant is on the bank of the Rhine. 10. The province had for a long time been protected by the tenth legion. 11. Cæsar himself wrote a letter to Cicero.

223.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 18.]

Hanc orationem de Dumnorige, Divitiaci fratre, Liscus habuerat. Caesar celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet (*retains*). Quaerit (*he asks*) ex eo solo ea quae in concilio dixerat. Eadem ab aliis quaerit. Vera (*true*) erant. Dumnorix ipse summā erat audaciā (*boldness*), magnā apud plebem (*the common people*) auctoritatē, Rōmānis nōn amicus. Multos annos omnia Aeduorum vectigalia redempta (*bought up*) habebat. Magnum numerum equitum semper circum (*about, around*) se habebat et apud alias civitates magnam auctoritatem habebat. Mater eius uxor erat hominis in Biturigibus (*the Bituriges*, a Gallic tribe) nobilissimī; ipse ex Helvetiis uxorem habebat. Ob (*on account of*) eam rem Helvetiis amicus erat.

In proeliō equestri (cavalry, adj.) quod paucis diebus ante factum erat (*had been made*, i.e. *fought*) initium fugae à Dumnorige et eius equitibus factum erat. Eōrum fugā reliqui equitēs territi erant.



CHAPTER XLI.

Fourth Conjugation : Passive Voice.

Indefinite Pronouns.

224. Learn the indicative passive of *audiō*. Compare the endings of each tense with the endings of the same tense of *dūcō*, and observe the differences.

225. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Vōx cōsulis in senātū audita est, audiētur, audiēbātur. 2. Cūius vōx auditur, audita erat, audita erit? 3. Quā ex urbe venis, veniēbās, vēnerās? 4. Illud oppidum mūnītur, mūniētur, mūnītum est. 5. Cicerōnis orātiōnem audiēmus, audīvimus, audīverāmus. 6. Vōcēs multōrum auditae sunt, audiēbantur, audientur. 7. Cūr veniunt, veniēbant, vēnerunt? 8. Eadem in senātū dicta sunt.

II. 1. In what city do we live, shall we live, have we lived? 2. We have come to this city, shall come, were coming. 3. The winter quarters will be fortified, were being fortified, have been fortified. 4. What did you

227.

VOCABULARY.

captivus, -ī, *m.*, captive.**colloquium**, -ī, *n.*, conference.**aliquis**, -quae (-qua), -quid, some, somebody, something.**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (**quoddam**), a certain.**quis**, **qua** (quae), **quid**, some, somebody, something.**quisque**, **quaque**, **quidque**, every, every one.**quisquam** . . . **quidquam**, some, somebody, something.**dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum (**dē** and **legō**), pick from, select.**reperiō**, -īre, **repperī**, **reper-tum**, find out.**neque**, *conj.*, and not.**neque** . . . **neque**, neither . . . nor.

228.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eadem dē Dumnorīge quisque apud mē dixit.
 2. Quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis nocte ad Caesarem vēnit. 3. Locum aliquem colloquiō idōneum dēligent. 4. Prīmum quisque itineris locum petēbat. 5. Ex captivō quōdam proximum iter in oppidum repertum est.
 6. Cūr quisquam illōs barbarōs timet? 7. Quāque hieme amīcī quidam patris mei in urbem veniēbant. 8. Quī vestrum rosās in hortīs publicis vidērunt? 9. Vōx magistrī ā quōque nostrum audita est. 10. Locus quem dux dēlēgit paucis diēbus mūniētur. 11. In prōvinciam mīsit equitēs, sed reliquum exercitum in hiberna dūxit.
 12. Multa arborum genera sunt in eā silvā.

II. 1. Some friends of mine are spending the winter in Greece and Italy. 2. In the winter we live in a large and celebrated city. 3. He will encamp every night four miles from the enemy. 4. I saw certain boys in the city last night. 5. The number of inhabitants of this city is very large. 6. Cæsar's daughter was called Julia. 7. He had not heard about the arrival of Ariovistus, nor

was anything found out from the captives. 8. The voice of my mother was heard at dawn. 9. Many merchants used to come into Gaul every summer. 10. We dismissed every pupil before night on account of the weather. 11. Certain captives were led into the senate.



CHAPTER XLII.

Infinitives of Sum ; Infinitives of First and Second Conjugations.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua) ; Subject of the Infinitive.

229. Learn the infinitives of *sum* (p. 222), and the infinitives, both active and passive, of *amō* and *habēō*.

The present infinitive has already been introduced in sentences in which it is used in Latin just as in English, and required no explanation ; as, —

**Helvētīī parātī erant obsidēs dare,
Properat in altiōrem locum castra movēre.**

230. For a different use of the infinitive, examine the following sentences : —

DIRECT. **Puer parat,** *the boy is preparing.*

INDIRECT. **Dicō puerum parāre,** *I say that the boy is preparing.*

DIRECT. **Locus parātus est,** *the place has been prepared.*

INDIRECT. *Putō locum parātum esse, I think that the place has been prepared.*

DIRECT. *Puer parābit, the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

INDIRECT. *Videō puerum parātūrum esse, I see that the boy will (is going to) prepare.*

Observe that the sentences marked **INDIRECT** contain the same statements as the corresponding sentences marked **DIRECT**, but that in the sentences marked **INDIRECT** the statements are attributed to some speaker or observer. A statement thus attributed to any one, and not directly quoted, is called an *Indirect statement*, or a statement in *Indirect Discourse*.

In English, statements in *Indirect Discourse* are introduced by the conjunction *that* (which may sometimes be omitted), the subject is in the Nominative (Subjective) case, and the verb in the Indicative mood. In Latin, statements in *Indirect Discourse* are not introduced by a conjunction, the subject is in the Accusative case, and the verb in the Infinitive.

231. RULE. — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

232. RULE. — *Statements after verbs (and other expressions) of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are expressed by the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative.*

233. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRESENT.

dicīt	} puerum parāre,	{	he says that the boy is preparing.
dicet			he will say that the boy is preparing.
dixit			he said that the boy was preparing.
dicīt	} locum parāri,	{	he says that the place is being prepared.
dicet			he will say that the place is being prepared.
dixit			he said that the place was being prepared.

PERFECT.

dict	} puerum parā-	{	he says that the boy has prepared.
dicet			he will say that the boy has prepared.
dixit			he said that the boy had prepared.
	visse,		
dict	} locum parātum	{	he says that the place has been prepared.
dicet			he will say that the place has been prepared.
dixit			he said that the place had been prepared.
	esse,		

FUTURE.

dict	} puerum parātū	{	he says that the boy will prepare.
dicet			he will say that the boy will prepare.
dixit			he said that the boy would (was going to) prepare.
	rum esse,		
dict	} locum parātum	{	he says that the place will be prepared.
dicet			he will say that the place will be prepared.
dixit			he said that the place would (was going to) be prepared.
	iri, ¹		

Observe that in the first six sentences the preparing takes place at the same time as the saying, in the second six at a time before (past to) the saying, in the third six at a time after (future to) the saying.

234. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse the Present Infinitive is used to represent an action as going on; the Perfect, as completed; the Future, as in the future relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying.*

235.

VOCABULARY.

Athēnae, -ārum, <i>f.</i> , Athens.	putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think.
Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Rome.	respondeō, -ēre, -di, -spōnsum, reply.
cōfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, assert, encourage.	sciō, scīre, scivī, scītum, know.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report.	

¹ A more usual form for the future passive infinitive is *fore* (a future infinitive of *sum*) *ut* and the subjunctive. See 387.

236.**EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Impetūs hostium sustinēre nōn est facile. 2. Imperātor scit milites domōs nostrās occupāre. 3. Omnēs sciunt Rōmam et Athēnās fuisse nōbilissimās urbēs. 4. Dumnorīx neque in colloquium veniet neque exercitum dīmittet. 5. Casticus cōfirmat sē prōvinciam occupātūrum esse. 6. Captīvi putāvērunt exercitū adventū incolās territōs esse. 7. Dīcit aliquis portum nāvibus longīs complētum irī. 8. Nūntiābātur exercitum locō¹ proeliō idōneō cōnsēdisse. 9. Repperit principēs Aeduōrum in Britanniam properāvisse. 10. Cicerō respondit sē posterō diē senātum convocātūrum esse. 11. Hortus pūblicus mulieribus ac liberis complētus est.

II. 1. Who says that the route through the province is easy? 2. The general has already selected a certain man as his lieutenant. 3. Does not everyone know that our slaves have been set free? 4. The merchant reported that the Gauls were men of great stature. 5. My mother knows that neither you nor I am strong. 6. The farmer ascertained that a large number of his horses were standing in the water. 7. Who says that boys like to toil? 8. My daughter says in her letter that she will be in the city in a few days. 9. I did not know that Cæsar had called Divitiacus to a conference. 10. Marcus is not in the garden, nor has anyone of us seen him.

237.**READING LESSON.**

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 19-21.]

Caesar Divitiacum, Dumnorigis frātre, quī populī Rōmānī amicus erat, ad sē vocāvit, et dē Dumnorige multa

¹ The preposition *in* is frequently omitted with *locō*.

dixit. Petīvit ut (*that*) sine (*without*, takes the abl.) eius offēsiōne (*offence*) animī Dumnorīgem pūnīret (*might punish*). Divitiacus ā Caesare petīvit nē (*that . . . not*) Dumnorīgem pūnīret. Caesar Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat. Dicit sē ei vitam (*life*) dare; tamen (*nevertheless*) cūs-tōdēs ei pōnit (*places*). Eōdem diē Caesarī ab explō-rātōribus nūntiātur hostēs sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdisse (perfect infinitive of *cōnsidō*) mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō. Iter in montem facile esse nūntiātur. Tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter cōgnōve-rant (*knew*) montem āscendere (*to ascend*) iubet (*orders*). Ipse quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant (*had gone*) ad eōs contendit (*hastens*). Pūblius Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemittitur (*is sent ahead*).



CHAPTER XLIII.

Infinitives of Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Expressions of Place.

238. Learn the infinitives, active and passive, of *dūcō* and *audiō*.

Notice the stems and endings.

Give the infinitives, active and passive, of *legō*, *scribō*, *petō*, *mūniō*, *reperiō*, *sciō*.

239. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.*Expressions of Place.*

1. **Militēs in oppidō sunt**, *the soldiers are in the town.*
2. **Militēs ad montem vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came to the mountain.*
3. **Militēs ē prōvinciā vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came from the province.*
4. **Militēs Rōmae sunt**, *the soldiers are at Rome.*
5. **Militēs Athēnīs sunt**, *the soldiers are at Athens.*
6. **Militēs Rōmam vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came to Rome.*
7. **Militēs Rōmā vēnērunt**, *the soldiers came from Rome.*

Notice that, in 1, the place *where* (or *in which*) is expressed by a preposition with the ablative case; in 2, the place *whither* (or *to which*) by a preposition with the accusative; and in 3, the place *whence* (or *from which*) by a preposition with the ablative.

Notice that with names of cities (4-7) no preposition is used, and that place *where* is expressed by the Locative case.

In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative case is like the genitive. Elsewhere it is like the ablative. **Domus** has a locative **domī**, *at home*, and **rūs** has **rūrī**, *in the country*.

240. RULE. — *With names of cities and towns:—*

- I. *Place where is expressed by the locative.*
- II. *Place whither by the accusative without a preposition.*
- III. *Place whence by the ablative without a preposition.*

Domus, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, in expressions of place are used like names of cities.

241.

VOCABULARY.

collis, -is, m. (<i>decl. like ignis</i>), hill.	conveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, (<i>con and veniō</i>) come to- gether, assemble, meet.
Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth.	ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, (ē and dūcō), lead out or away.
Massilia, -ae, f., Massilia.	
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cisum, kill.	impediō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, (in- and pēs), hinder, impede.
pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, place, pitch (of a camp).	

242.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Explōrātōrēs nūtiāvērunt castra in colle pōnī.
 2. Nūtiat aliquis multōs civēs Athēnīs occisōs esse.
 3. Dieit quīdam nostrās cōpiās omnēs Corinthum conven-
 tūrās esse. 4. Dicēbāsne tuum frātre^m Massiliā vēnisse?
 5. Imperātor scīvit mulierem quamque mitti ex oppidō.
 6. Ex explōrātōribus repperī Hannibalem ex castris
 exercitum suum ēdūxisse. 7. Nūtiātūr Caesarē in
 ripā Rhodanī castra posuisse. 8. Senātus nōn putābat
 Caesarē Rōmam ventūrum esse. 9. Ex captivīs reper-
 tum est ūnum ē filiīs Ariovistī occisum esse. 10. Lēgā-
 tus respondit iter impetū equitum hostium impeditum
 esse.

II. 1. He said that neither the farmer nor his son had
 come home. 2. He had remained at Rome many years.
 3. We thought that you would come to Rome with your
 mother. 4. It was easy to fortify the hill on which the
 camp had been pitched. 5. She said that she had writ-
 ten a letter to a friend in Athens. 6. Divitiacus asserted
 that he had always been a friend to the Romans. 7. We
 found out that the captives had been led away to a forti-
 fied place. 8. Ariovistus replied to the ambassadors that
 he would neither come to a conference nor withdraw from

Gaul. 9. The general selected from his troops a certain young man as guide. 10. We knew that you had remained a long time at Massilia.



CHAPTER XLIV.

Verbs in *-io* of the Third Conjugation.

243. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods, active and passive, of *capiō* (p. 229).

Of which conjugation is *capiō*? Why?

Compare each tense with the same tense of *dūcō* and note the differences in formation, if there are any.

Like *capiō*, conjugate all the verbs in *-iō* in **244**.

244. VOCABULARY.

<i>medius</i> , -a, -um, middle of.	<i>iaciō</i> , -ere, <i>īcī</i> , <i>lactum</i> , throw.
<i>capiō</i> , -ere, <i>cēpī</i> , <i>captum</i> , take, capture.	<i>recipiō</i> , -ere, - <i>cēpī</i> , - <i>ceptum</i> , take back; <i>sē recipere</i> , re- treat.
<i>faciō</i> , -ere, <i>fēcī</i> , <i>factum</i> , make.	<i>interficiō</i> , -ere, - <i>fēcī</i> , - <i>fectum</i> , slay. [once.
<i>fugiō</i> , -ere, <i>fūgī</i> , <i>fugitum</i> , flee.	<i>statim</i> , <i>adv.</i> , immediately, at
<i>instruō</i> , -ere, - <i>strūxī</i> , - <i>strūc-</i> <i>tum</i> , draw up.	

245. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Capiunt*, *capimini*, *capiēbāmur*. 2. *Iacis*, *iaciēs*, *iaciēbās*. 3. *Iacitur*, *iaciētur*, *iaciēbātur*. 4. *Fugiēmus* *Corinthō*. 5. *Fugiēbāmus* *ab urbe*. 6. *Fugiēbant* *Massiliā*. 7. *Parātī* *erant* *iter facere*. 8. *In collem sē* *recipient*. 9. *Multi dē nostris captī sunt*. 10. *Putat omnēs interfectōs esse*.

II. 1. We are throwing, we shall throw. 2. We shall be taken, they have been taken. 3. We shall make a journey to Rome. 4. They were fleeing to the camp. 5. They throw stones from the wall. 6. Many were being slain at Rome. 7. He reports that the town has been taken. 8. The old men will remain at home. 9. They were marching from home. 10. Stones were thrown by the boys.

246.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs magnā caede oppidum cēpērunt. 2. Hostēs in omnēs partēs fugiēbant. 3. Duae filiae fuērunt Ariovistō; hārum altera occisa est, altera capta est. 4. Statim nūntiat militēs ad montem sē recipere. 5. Nostrī pila iaciēbant et in castra sē recipiēbant. 6. Caesar respondet Labiēnum cōpiās ē castris ēducere et in mediō¹ colle aciem instrūctūrum esse. 7. Poētae² erat in animō Rōmā iter facere Athēnās. 8. Urbs capta est et multi incolae interfectī sunt. 9. Nūntiat castra apud Genāvam posita esse. 10. Quot hominēs Massiliae occisī sunt? 11. Pater tuus, quī in urbe est, tē domum missum esse nōn scit.

II. 1. He knows that you were often in Corinth. 2. The scouts assembled at dawn, and immediately departed from the camp. 3. Do you think that the enemy will retire to a fortified place? 4. They reported that a line of battle had been drawn up on the middle of the hill. 5. He told the citizens that very many captives were taken in that battle. 6. The general asserted that he would at once take Corinth. 7. I was at home neither

¹ On the middle of, i.e. half-way up.

² See 49.

last night nor the night before. 8. The boys, who threw the stones, have fled. 9. The troops will quickly retire to the nearest hill. 10. The messenger said that he had been hindered at the river.

247.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 22-23.]

Primā luce summus (*highest*, i.e. *the top of*) mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur, Caesar ipse ab hostium castris mille et quīngentis passibus aberat (*was distant*). Tum (*then*) Cōnsidius ad Caesarem vēnit, dīxit montem ab hostibus tenērī. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem dūxit, aciem instrūxit. Labiēnus, quī montem occupāverat, nostrōs expectābat suāsque legiōnēs ā proeliō continēbat. Multō diē¹ Caesarī per explōrātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium propter timōrem (*fear*) falsa (*false things*) sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē Caesar cum cōpiis suis iter fēcit et milia passuum tria ab hostium castris castra posuit. Posterō diē Caesar ad oppidum Aeduōrum māximum, Bibracte, quod milia passuum duodēviginti aberat (*was distant*) iter facere cōstituit (*determined*), ubi cōpiam frūmentī esse putāvit. Helvētiī Rōmānōs territōs (*frightened*) fugere putāvērunt. Itaque (*therefore*) iter convertērunt (*they turned*) et in novissimum nostrum āgmen multōs impetūs faciēbant.

¹ multō diē, at *much day*, i.e. *when the day was far advanced*.

CHAPTER XLV.

Participles.

248. Learn all the participles, active and passive, of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *capīō*; also of *sum*. Note the stems and endings.

Observe that there is no present passive nor perfect active participle.

Participles ending in *-ns* are declined like *potēns*. See p. 56. Those ending in *-us* are declined like *bonus*. See p. 18.

249. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Hostēs pugnantes per urbem currēbant*, the enemy ran fighting through the city.
2. *Multōs in urbe occisōs vidēbat*, he saw many who had been slain in the city (literally, many having been slain, or, many slain).
3. *Epistulam scriptam ad amicum misit*, he wrote a letter and sent it to his friend (literally, he sent a letter having been written, or, a written letter to his friend).
4. *Eum domi manentem saepe vidēbam*, I often saw him while he was remaining at home (literally, him remaining at home).
5. *Miles graviter vulnerātus fortiter pugnāvit*, although severely wounded, the soldier fought bravely (literally, the soldier, having been severely wounded, fought bravely).
6. *Servus liberātus erit laetus*, the slave, if liberated, will be glad (literally, the slave, having been liberated, will be glad).

7. **His rēbus mōtī proelium committēbant**, *because they were influenced by these considerations they joined battle* (literally, *moved by these considerations, they joined battle*).

Observe (1) that the participles in the above sentences agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case, like other adjectives; (2) that the present participle represents an action as going on, and the perfect participle action as completed, with reference to the time denoted by the leading verb; (3) that most of the participles are equivalent to clauses in English. Before translation, ascertain the precise idea expressed by the participle.

The use of the future active participle and the gerundive (sometimes called the future passive participle) is confined for the most part to special constructions, which will be considered in a subsequent chapter.

250.

VOCABULARY.

arma , -ōrum, <i>n.</i> , arms.	cōgō , -ere, coēgī , coāctum ,
dēditlō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , surrender.	collect, compel.
inopia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , want.	addūcō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,
iūsiūrandum , iūrisiūrandī ,	(ad and dūcō), lead to, in-
(iūs and iūrandum), oath.	duce.
tēlum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , weapon, missile.	ob (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), on account of.

251.

EXERCISES.

- I. 1. **Agricolam equōs ad flūmen agentem vīdimus.**
 2. **Civitās ob eam rem incitāta multitudinem hominum ex agrīs cōgēbat.** 3. **Ē locō superiōre in nostrōs (militēs) venientēs tēla iaciēbant.** 4. **Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum mīsērunt.**
 5. **Centuriō fortissimē pūgnāns interficiēbātur.** 6. **Ab hostibus captī statim interficiēmur.** 7. **Hāc orātiōne**

adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant. 8. Legionēs se armis defendentes in collem se recepērunt. 9. Oppidum naturā ac manū munitum expugnatum est. 10. Equitēs impediti in flumine occisi sunt. 11. Ariovistus iureiurandō tenēri nōn coactus est. 12. Cōsiderat cum omnibus cōpiis quae ē multis civitatibus coactae erant.

II. 1. The boy saw his sister writing a letter. 2. Cæsar, as he was influenced by these considerations,¹ pitched his camp on the middle of the hill. 3. The Belgæ, although they fought bravely, were slain. 4. The men, if frightened, will flee at once. 5. Will you come to Corinth? 6. Influenced by a lack of grain and (other) supplies, we shall surrender (make a surrender). 7. He has troops collected from many states. 8. Did you say that Labienus drew up a line of battle? 9. The enemy threw their missiles and retired. 10. We saw your brother as he came home. 11. On account of these things the troops were led out of the camp. 12. They had many arms concealed in the town.



CHAPTER XLVI.

Deponent Verbs.

252. Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning. They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that the future infinitive has the active form (*mirātūrus esse*, not *mirātum iri*), and they have the participles of both voices.

¹ *I.e.* things.

mirāns, *admiring.***mirātus**, *having admired.***mirātūrus**, *about to admire.***mirandus**, *to be admired.*

The perfect participle is usually active in meaning, but the gerundive (Chapter LXIII.) is always passive.

253. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.1. **Miles gladiō ūtitur**, *the soldier uses his sword.*2. **Caesar urbe potītus est**, *Cæsar got possession of the city.*

Observe that *gladiō* is used with *ūtitur*, and *urbe* with *potītus est*.

A few other verbs are followed by the ablative.

254. RULE. — *The deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor and their compounds govern the ablative.*

255. VOCABULARY.**angustiae, -ārum, f.**, narrow
pass, narrowness.**ūtor, ūtī, ūsus**, use.**impedimenta, -ōrum, n.**, baggage.**fruor, fruī, fructus**, enjoy.**miror, -ārī, -ātus**, admire, wonder at.**fungor, fungi, fūctus**, perform.**sequor, sequī, secūtus**, follow.**potior, potirī, potītus**, get possession of.**vereor, verērī, verītus**, fear.**vescor, vescī, eat.****256. EXERCISES.**

I. 1. Nōn hostēs sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum veremur. 2. Bonis libris semper fruimur. 3. Nostri impedimentis castrisque potiti sunt. 4. Mercator corporum magnitudinem Gallorum mirabatur. 5. Caesar hostes fugientes secutus multos interfecit. 6. Ob eam rem milites gladiis facilius utebantur. 7. Dicunt ducem hostes magna celeritate secutum esse. 8. Barbari

tōtā urbe potītī erant. 9. In prōvinciā multīs rēbus fru-
ēbāmur. 10. Dux māgnam multitudinem peditum ex
agris cōēgit. 11. Equī frūmentō vescuntur. 12. Mārcus
labōre fungitur.

II. 1. The Helvetians and Sequanians give an oath
to each other.¹ 2. The general drew up a line of battle
before the camp. 3. Many of the inhabitants were
killed as they were retiring into the town. 4. Did you
see the boy who threw the stone? 5. The commander
divided among his soldiers² the arms which were
captured. 6. The enemy threw their missiles and fled
into the woods. 7. Whose book did you use? 8. The
general, after having followed the Helvetians many days,
took possession of their camp. 9. No one enjoys extreme
want. 10. The soldier said at once that he did not fear
the enemy. 11. Eagles eat small animals. 12. The sol-
diers finished (performed) their toil and withdrew.

257.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 24-26.]

Postquam (*after*) id nūntiātum est, cōpiās suās Caesar
in proximum collem dūxit equitēsque contrā hostēs mīsit.
Ipse in colle mediō aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor et
in summō (*the top of*) colle duās legiōnēs et omnia auxi-
lia (*auxiliaries*) posuit, ac tōtum montem hominibus
complēvit. Helvētīi, quī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī
erant, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt (*brought
together*); ipsī nostrōs equitēs superāvērunt et ad primam
nostram aciem vēnērunt. Caesar celeriter proelium com-
mīsit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pīla mīsērunt quibus

¹ Cf. 251. I. 7,

² For among the soldiers use the dative,

facile hostium aciem perfrēgērunt (*broke through*). Tum (*then*) gladiis in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Galli diū fortiter pūgnāvērunt; tandem (*at length*) in montem qui suberat (*was near*) sē recēpērunt. In itinere et ad montem diū et ācritē pūgnātum est. Tandem impedimentis castrisque Helvētiōrum nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi (*there*) Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Helvētiōrum circiter (*about*) milia centum et trīgintā ex eō proeliō fūgērunt, et quārtō diē in finēs Lingonum (*of the Lingonēs*) vērērunt.



CHAPTER XLVII.

Possum: Infinitive not in Indirect Discourse.

258. Learn the indicative and the infinitive moods of *possum* (p. 234).

259. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Laudārī est grātum, to be praised is pleasant; or, it is pleasant to be praised.*
2. *Vidērī nōn est semper esse, seeming (to seem) is not always being (to be).*

Observe that *laudārī* (in 1) and *vidērī* (in 2) are subjects, and that *esse* (in 2) is a predicate. This use of the infinitive is common to both English and Latin, but more common in Latin.

260. RULE.—*An infinitive with or without a subject-accusative may be used as the subject of a sentence or as a predicate noun.*

261. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Pugnāre nōn potest, he cannot fight.*
2. *Pugnāre nōn poterat, he could not fight.*
3. *Pugnāre parābant, they were preparing to fight.*

Observe that the infinitive *pugnāre* is used with *potest*, *poterat*, and *parābant* not as subject, but to complete the thought. This use of the infinitive also is common to English and Latin.

Such an infinitive is called a *complementary infinitive*.

262. RULE. — *The infinitive is used with certain verbs to complete their meaning.*

Remember that *can* and *could* should usually be expressed by some form of *possum*.

263. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. *Nihil vidēre potest.* 2. *Vēlōciter currere potes.*
 3. *Iuvāre mē nōn poterat.* 4. *Stāre nōn potuit.* 5. *Sōli multa reperīre potuerāmus.* 6. *Impedimenta capere potuerunt.* 7. *Parātus est domum venīre.* 8. *Properābam tē vocāre.* 9. *Coācti sunt sē recipere.*

II. 1. I am able to conceal nothing. 2. He could not use his foot. 3. We shall not be able to come. 4. He hurried to assist us. 5. I am ready to follow you. 6. We could not read. 7. He will not be able to run. 8. They could not retreat.

264. VOCABULARY.

amicitia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , friendship.	iubeō , -ēre, iūssī , iūssum , command.
periculum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , danger.	polliceor , -ērī, pollicitus , promise.
praesidium , -ī, <i>n.</i> , guard, protection, escort.	possum , posse , potuī , be able.
socius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , ally.	sine (<i>prep. with abl.</i>), without.
cadō , -ere, cecidī , cāsum , fall.	

265.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar oppidō potiri nōn potuit. 2. Militēs armīs ūti nōn potuerunt. 3. Sociis praesidium polliceri nōn potuerat. 4. In colle equitēs equis ūti nōn potuerunt. 5. Pauci dē nostris hostēs secūti in proeliō ceciderunt. 6. Nōne scitis mē vōbīs omnia tēla divisisse? 7. Sine periculō per angustias iter facere nōn possumus. 8. Eam ob rem vōbiscum dē dēditione agere nōn poterimus. 9. Vidistine Cicerōnis dē amicitia librum? 10. Rem publicam¹ in māgnō periculō esse cōsul putat. 11. Caesar principēs obsidēs ad sē addūcere iussit. 12. Militum labōre centuriōnēs fūcti sunt. 13. Inopia adducti hominēs equis vescuntur.

II. 1. He says that he is not afraid of you. 2. We could see the baggage of the enemy. 3. The state could not be bound by an oath. 4. Influenced by want, we hurry into the territory of our allies. 5. The consul promised² to protect his allies from wrongs. 6. The general could not come to Rome without a guard. 7. The commander-in-chief ordered a band of men to be collected from the country districts (*agrī*). 8. You enjoy the friendship of all good citizens. 9. We made an attack upon the camp, and many brave men fell. 10. The barbarians were astonished at the size of our ships.

¹ *Rēs publica*, public thing, state.

² *Polliceor* is usually followed by future infinitive, *i.e.*, the indirect discourse, but sometimes by the complementary infinitive.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Compounds of *Sum*.*Dative with Compounds.*

266. Learn the indicative and infinitive moods of *prōsum* (p. 235).

The peculiarities of compounds of *sum*, except *possum* and *prōsum*, will be readily learned from the vocabulary.

267. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. In periculis amicis aderat, *he aided his friends in dangers.*
2. Dumnorix equitibus praefuit, *Dumnorix commanded the cavalry.*
3. Liberōs amicis committēbant, *they were entrusting their children to their friends.*

Notice that the verbs of the above sentences are compounded with *ad*, *prae*, and *con*, and that they govern the dative case.

268. RULE. — *Many verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super govern the dative as indirect object.*

The dative is used with all compounds of *sum* except *possum* and *absum*.

269.

VOCABULARY.

auxilium, -i, n., help, assistance.

Brūtus, -i, m., Brutus.

vērus, -a, -um, true.

absum, -esse, āfui, (ab and sum), be absent, away, distant.

adsum, -esse, -fui, (ad and sum), be present, assist.

accidō, -ere, -cidi, (ad and cadō), fall upon, happen.

dēsum, -esse, -fui, (dē and sum), be away, fail.

praesum, -esse, -fui, (prae and sum), be over, at the head of, command.

praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum, (prae and pōnō), place over, place in command of

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, (prō(d) and sum), be profitable, help.

supersum, -esse, -fui, (super and sum), be over, survive. **circiter, adv.,** about.

270.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Caesar hibernis quae fecerat legatum praeposuit. 2. Titus amicis in periculis non deerat. 3. Brutus navibus longis praefuerat. 4. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia centum et quadraginta superfuērunt. 5. Copia librorum discipulis non semper prodest. 6. Pecunia vobis adesse possumus. 7. Socii rei publicae auxilium pollicebantur. 8. Vera amicitia omnibus prodest. 9. Nautae aliqui de navibus in aquam cadebant. 10. Sine auxilio castris impedimentisque potiri non poterimus. 11. Pater mihi quam tibi accidit. 12. Domus mea ab urbe milia passuum decem abest. 13. Equites defessi exploratorum labore functi frumentum vescabantur.

II. 1. The best protection of the republic is the valor of its citizens. 2. The citizens were not able to use the help which had been sent to them. 3. The cavalry followed the enemy many miles. 4. He says that he is not afraid of dangers. 5. I am astonished at the skill of these young men. 6. You could have been present at the conference. 7. Do you think that Brutus will command the army? 8. We enjoy the books which we are reading. 9. The camp of Brutus was about five miles distant from the narrow pass. 10. How many of the allies survived (from) this battle? 11. My father commanded us always to speak the truth (true things).

271.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 27-29.]

Helvëtiî omnium rërum inopiã adducti lëgâtôs dë dëditionë ad Caesarem misërunt, qui in itinere eum convënērunt et pãcem petivërunt. Iüssit eôs in eô locô quô tum (*then*) essent (*were*, subjunctive of *sum*) suum adventum exspectãre. Quod iüsserat fëcërunt. Postquam (*after*) ad eum locum Caesar vënerat circiter hominum milia sex nocte è castris Helvëtiôrum fûgërunt atque ad Rhënum finësque Germãnôrum contendërunt (*hastened*); Hôs ab eis quôrum per finës iter fëcerant reductôs (*brought back*, perfect passive participle of *reducô*) Caesar in hostium numerô habuit;¹ reliquôs in dëditionem recëpit. Helvëtiôs, Tulingôs (*the Tulingi*), Latobrigôs (*the Latobrigi*) in finës suôs unde (*whence*) vënerant reverti (*to return*) iüssit. Hôc bellô Helvëtiôrum et sociôrum circiter milia ducenta quinquãgintã octô occïsa sunt.



CHAPTER XLIX.

Dative with Intransitive Verbs.

272. 1. **Dumnorix Helvëtiis favet**, *Dumnorix favors the Helvetians.*
 2. **Puer patrî pãret**, *the boy obeys his father.*
 3. **Miles gladiô sibi nocuit**, *the soldier hurt (injured) himself with his sword.*

Observe that these verbs govern the dative in Latin, though their English equivalents are transitive.

¹ In hostium numerô habuit, *held in the number of his enemies, i.e. put to death.*

273. RULE. — *Most verbs meaning to favor, please, trust, believe, help, and their opposites, also to command, obey, serve, resist, persuade, and the like, govern the dative.*

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, *i.e.* corresponding to an English verb with the indefinite *it* as a subject; as, *nocētur*, it hurts (injures), *i.e.* harm (injury) is done; *patri pārētur*, obedience is rendered to the father. Observe that with the impersonal passive of verbs governing the dative, the dative used with the active is retained unchanged.

Dēlectō, *iuvō*, and *iubeō*, (already familiar to the pupil) and a few other verbs of this class govern the accusative.

274. VOCABULARY.

equitātus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , cavalry.	faveō , -ēre, fāvi , fautum , favor.
lēx , lēgis , <i>f.</i> , law.	
aliēnus , -a, -um, (alius), belonging to another, unfavorable.	noceō , -ēre, -uī, nocitum , harm, injure.
crēdō , crēdere , crēdidī , crēditum , (<i>cf. Eng. credit</i>), trust.	parcō , -ere, pepercī , spare.
	pāreō , -ēre, -uī, obey.
	longē , <i>adv.</i> , far, by far.

275. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Boni cīvēs lēgibus cīvitātis pārent. 2. Eā orātiōne sibi ac rei pūblicae nocuit. 3. Scīmus mala omnibus accidere. 4. Ille puer vēra non semper dīcit neque eī crēdere possum. 5. Cicerō prōvinciam omnem Caesarī favēre reppererat. 6. Equitātus Helvētiōrum in aliēnō locō proelium committunt, et tertia eōrum pars occīsa est. 7. Iubet servum sōlis occāsū equum ad sē addūcere. 8. Equitātum sine māgnō periculō sequī poterimus. 9. Labiēnus prōvinciae praepositus domō in Galliam properāvit. 10. Caesar mulieribus ac liberis pepereit

sed virōs interfēcit. 11. Captivīs nihil¹ nocēbitur.
 12. Propter auxili adventum equitātus nōs nōn longē
 secūtus est.

II. 1. I was not able to be present at the conference.
 2. Brutus was distant from the city about twenty miles.
 3. Large armies are not profitable to republics. 4. A
 few who had survived from the battle fell in the flight.
 5. We were not far distant from the largest town of our
 allies. 6. Soldiers promise to obey their generals. 7. The
 ambassador did not trust the escort (*praesidium*) which
 had been sent. 8. The consul favors severe laws. 9. He
 will spare Dumnorix on account of the friendship of his
 brother. 10. He was able to assist his younger brothers.
 11. Who is at the head of this army?



CHAPTER L.

Ferō and Compounds of Ferō.

276. Learn the indicative, infinitives, and participles
 of both voices of *ferō* (p. 238).

Observe that in the forms referred to, the irregularities are
 confined to the present tense.

What are the irregularities?

The changes which take place in the final consonant of the
 preposition in the compounds will be learned from the principal
 parts.

¹ Used adverbially, in *nothing*.

277.

VOCABULARY.

cōnsilium, -i, *n.*, advice, counsel, plan.

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation, tribe.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

ferō, *ferre*, **tuli**, **lātum**, carry, bring, bear.

cōnferō, -*ferre*, **contulī**, **collātum**, (*con and ferō*), bring together, collect.

effērō, -*ferre*, **extulī**, **ēlātum**, (*ex and ferō*), bring or carry out, produce.

īnferō, -*ferre*, **intulī**, **illātum**, (*in and ferō*), bear in or against; **bellum īnferre**, begin war.

278.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Fert, ferunt. 2. Fertur, feruntur. 3. Effers, effertis. 4. Tulimus, tulit. 5. Effert, infert. 6. Cōnferimus, efferunt. 7. Cōnferēbat, cōnferēbantur. 8. Lātus est, ēlāti sunt. 9. Collāti sunt, illātum erat. 10. Auxilium ferre potest. 11. Dicit sē auxilium lātūrum esse.

II. 1. We shall carry, he was carried. 2. They collect, they were being collected. 3. You (sing.) carry, you (plur.) are carried. 4. It was carried out, they were carried in. 5. They had collected arms. 6. We said that he would begin war.

279.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Cīvēs Rōmānī nōmen rēgis ferre nōn potuerunt. 2. Omnēs Galliae nātiōnēs linguā et lēgibus sunt dissimilēs. 3. Multi sunt in nostrā urbe quī in bellō arma tulērunt. 4. In silvās palūdēsque incolae fugiunt suaque omnia eō cōnferunt. 5. Frūmentum trium mēnsium domō quemque efferre iubet. 6. Bona cōnsilia senum iuvenibus saepe prōfuērunt et semper prōderunt. 7. Neque Aeduis

neque sociis eorum bellum inferam. 8. Mihi hic vir non nocuit, sed ei credere non possum. 9. Circiter mille homines qui in loco alieno coacti erant pugnare interfecti sunt. 10. Pater putat malum filio accidisse.

II. 1. They were daily carrying grain from the fields into the camp. 2. Brutus did not spare his own son. 3. My brother is away, but he will be here in a short time. 4. Only ten days of this month remain. 5. Who was in command of the Roman legions in Gaul? 6. Good cavalry was not lacking in our war. 7. It is not easy to obey all men. 8. My mother favors her youngest son. 9. True friends render assistance in danger and adversity. 10. You see by far the most beautiful part of Gaul. 11. Brutus will be appointed to the command of (*praepono*) the cavalry.

280.

READING LESSON.

[*CAESAR, Gallic War, Book I. 30-31*]

Post (*after*) bellum Helvetiorum totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum ad Caesarem conveniunt. Petiunt ut (*that*) sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere (*to appoint*) liceret (*it might be permitted*, with dative). Dixerunt sese habere quasdam res quas ab eo petere vellent (*wished*). Hoc Caesar permisit (*permitted*). Principes diem concilio constituerunt. Post concilium pro his Divitiacus apud Caesarem dixit: Galliae totius factiones (*parties*) esse duas; harum alterius ducem esse Aeduos, alterius Sequanos. Hos de potestate multos iam annos bellum gessisse. A Sequanis Germanos in Galliam traductos (*led across*) esse et Sequanorum hostes multis proeliis superavisse; Sequanos

ipsōs Germānīs pārēre coāctōs esse. Ducem Germānōrum, Ariovistum, barbarum atque crudēlem (*cruel*) esse. Caesarem exercitū suō eum prohibēre posse nē¹ māiōrem multitudinem in Galliam dūcat, Galliamque omnem ab eius iniuriā dēfendere posse.



CHAPTER LI.

Irregular Verbs Volō, Nōlō, and Mālō.

281. Learn the indicative, infinitive, and participles of *volō, nōlō, and mālō* (p. 236). Observe that the irregularity of ending is confined to the present tense.

282. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Lēgī parēre vult. 2. Scrībere volumus. 3. Labōrāre nōn vult. 4. Legere māvult. 5. Scīre voluī. 6. Pūgnāre nōlunt. 7. Iubēre volēbat. 8. Fugere nōluit. 9. Dixit sē nōlle dūcere. 10. Dicunt sē mälle sequī.

II. 1. You (sing.) wish to move. 2. He is not willing to lead. 3. We prefer to remain. 4. He desired to be strong. 5. They were not willing to follow. 6. He wishes to be present. 7. They will be unwilling to follow. 8. He says that he prefers to run. 9. What does he wish to say? 10. They wish to command.

¹ nē . . . dūcat, *from leading; or, that he should not lead.*

283.

VOCABULARY.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure. **nōlō**, nōlle, nōlui, (*nē and iūstus*, -a, -um, just. **volō**), be unwilling.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, try, endeavor. **mālō**, mālle, mālui, (*magis incidō*, -ere, -cidī, (*in and and volō*), wish more, prefer.
cadō), fall into, fall in with. **post**, (*prep. with acc.*), after.
volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.

284.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Mōns quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit ab hostibus tenētur. 2. Per prōvinciam nostram sine iniuriā iter facere volunt. 3. Post profectiōnem equitātūs captivī cūstōdibus nocēre conātī sunt. 4. Nōn vult aliī iniuriā inferre. 5. Senex filiō quī inciderat in rēs adversās auxilium tulit. 6. Mālumus aestāte litus incolere quam in urbe manēre. 7. Virī multārum nātiōnum Rōmam sē suaque contulerant. 8. Puella ex urbe multa domum efferre vult. 9. Multī cōguntur ad labōrem māgnā noctis parte ūti. 10. Captivī cūstōdibus nocēre cōnātī impedīmenta portāre coāctī sunt.

II. 1. Many men are not willing to obey the laws of the state. 2. The young man prefers to use his own language (rather) than (that) of another.¹ 3. The boy is not willing to take² the advice of older men. 4. The just judge did not favor the citizens of his own city. 5. Our country produces food for other nations. 6. The general was not willing to encamp in an unfavorable place. 7. Other nations use much food which our country produces. 8. Cæsar spared his enemies, and they (*quī*) slew him. 9. We desire to trust those among whom we dwell. 10. The lieutenants will select a place for a camp and carry thither an abundance of everything.

¹ For of another use proper case of *aliēnus*.

² Use *utor*.

CHAPTER LII.

Irregular Verbs *Eō* and *Fīō*.*Two Datives.*

285. Learn the indicative, the infinitives, and the participles of *eō* and *fiō* (p. 239).

Notice that *i*, the stem of *eō* is changed to *e* in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, and in the present participle except in the nominative singular.

Fīō is used as the passive of *faciō*.

286. EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Ad colloquium it. 2. In urbem ibunt. 3. Initium fugae fit. 4. In vicum iit. 5. Clārus fiēs. 6. Proelium factum erat. 7. Māgnus fieri voluit. 8. Nōlui ire. 9. Ierant, ierint in insulam. 10. Nōn fit poēta.

II. 1. We are going to the village. 2. We shall go, he has gone. 3. It happened to be summer. 4. He preferred to go. 5. He has become a man. 6. I desire to become a merchant. 7. They will go in the night. 8. He says that his father has gone. 9. He says that he is about to go. 10. He will become famous.

287. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Aedui Caesarī auxiliō erant, the Aeduians were (for) a support to Caesar.*
2. *Equitēs auxiliō Brūtō missi sunt, the cavalry were sent as a support to Brutus.*

Observe that in each sentence one of the datives may be translated by *for*, and the other by *to*. The one translated by *for* is called the dative of *purpose*. The dative of purpose is frequently better rendered as a predicate noun (sometimes with *as*) than by *for*.

288. RULE. — *Two datives, of the object to which and of the end for which, are used with sum and a few other verbs.*

289.

VOCABULARY.

dolor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , grief, pain.	redeō, -īre, -īi, -itum, (<i>red and eō</i>), go back, return.
parēns, -entis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> , parent.	fīō, fierī, factus, (<i>pass. of faciō</i>), be made, become.
trāns, (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), across.	nāscor, nāsci, nātus, be born.
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, ought, owe.	praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, (<i>prae and ferō</i>), carry before, prefer.
eō, ire, ivī (īi), itum, go.	
exeō, -ire, -īi, -itum, (<i>ex and eō</i>), go out or away.	

290.

EXERCISES.

I 1. Alius agricola fierī vult, alius mercātor. 2. Omnes hūmānitātem voluptātī praeferre dēbēmus. 3. Agricola auxiliō filiis domum hominem misit. 4. Cōnābimur ante profectiōnem tuam domum redire. 5. Parentēs nostrī ex urbe exiērunt; multō diē redībunt. 6. Multi iuvenēs domō exire quam cum parentibus manēre mālunt. 7. Omnia nostra cōferēmus et in prōvinciam ibimus. 8. Senex nātiōnum multarum linguīs ūtitur. 9. Parentēs mei ex Graeciā multa efferēbant. 10. Nātus quadrāgintā annōs Caesar cōsul factus est. 11. Ubi fuistī dē secundā vigiliā proximae noctis? 12. Cūr āfuistī domō? 13. Nātiōnēs quae trāns Rhēnum incolēbant Gallicā linguā nōn ūtēbantur.

II. 1. I shall try to find out his plan. 2. I have always wished to go to Rome. 3. The departure of our parents was (for) a great grief to us. 4. Every one¹ ought to prefer to become good (rather) than famous. 5. He was unwilling to wage war upon his fellow-citizens. 6. In the wars of Rome many citizens were slain. 7. The merchant desired to be away two months. 8. He is a just man and ought to be made a judge. 9. The cavalry of all Gaul came together in one place after Cæsar's departure. 10. We fell in with your parents in Rome twenty days ago.

291.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Galic War*, I. 33-40.]

Caesar Gallōrum animōs cōfirmāvit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae (dat. of cūra, *care*) futūram esse; crēdere² sēsē auctōritāte suā adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis factūrum esse. Tum (*then*) concilium dīmisit. Lēgātī ā Caesare missī ab Ariovistō pōstulāvērunt ut (*that*) in colloquium venīret (*would come*). Hīs Ariovistus respondit sē ventūrum nōn esse. Caesar iterum (*again*) lēgātōs mīsit quī dicēbant eum Aeduōs aliōsque populi Rōmānī amicōs dēfēnsūrum esse. Eōdem tempore ad Caesarem lēgātī ab Aeduīs et Treverīs (*the Treveri*) veniēbant quī dicēbant multōs Germānōs in Galliam vēnisse et in finibus suis cōsēdisse. Hīs rēbus adductus Caesar bellum quam celerrimē³ cum Ariovistō gerere cōstituit, et Vesontionem (*Vesontio*), quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, Ire

¹ The Romans often used *omnēs* where we say *every one*.

² Sometimes the indirect discourse depends upon a verb merely implying the idea of saying (here *pollicitus est*). In English, insert *saying* or *and said*.

³ *quam celerrime*, as quickly as possible.

properāvit. Militēs, vōcibus territī Gallōrum ac mercātorum quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne (*practice*) in armīs esse dicēbant, longius (comparative of *longē*) ire nōlebant. Eōrum animōs Caesar longā orātiōne cōfirmāvit.



CHAPTER LIII.

Derivation and Composition of Words.

292. Latin words, like English words, are sometimes simple, that is, made of one part; and sometimes compound, that is, made of two or more parts, each of which has a distinct meaning. Examples of compound words have already been given, some of which are repeated in the following lists for comparison and further study.

sum,	<i>I am.</i>
ab-sum,	<i>I am away (from), I am absent.</i>
ad-sum,	<i>I am at or near (the person or thing in question), I am present.</i>
dē-sum,	<i>I am away from, I am wanting or lacking, I fail.</i>
prae-sum,	<i>I am before, am in front of, am present, am at the head of (as a leader is in front of the army), I command.</i>
prō-sum,	<i>I am for (a person or thing), I help, am advantageous.</i>
super-sum,	<i>I am over, I am left over, I survive.</i>
pos-sum,	<i>(from pot [is], able, and sum) I am able, I can.</i>
ferō,	<i>I bear, carry, bring.</i>
cōn-ferō,	<i>I carry or bring together (then, because when two or more things are brought together one cannot help seeing their points of resemblance or difference, I compare).</i>

dis-ferō,	<i>I bear or carry apart, I put off, also I differ.</i>
ex-ferō,	(for <i>ec</i> [<i>i.e.</i> <i>ex</i>] -ferō), <i>I bear or carry out.</i>
in-ferō,	<i>I bear or bring in or against.</i>
prae-ferō,	<i>I bear or carry or put before, I prefer.</i>
eō,	<i>I go.</i>
ex-eō,	<i>I go out.</i>
red-eō,	<i>I go back, I return.</i>
capiō,	<i>I take.</i>
re-cipiō,	<i>I take back, recover.</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold.</i>
con-tineō,	<i>I hold together, contain, bound (in geographical sense).</i>
per-tineō,	<i>I hold or stretch through, extend, pertain to.</i>
sus-tineō,	(for <i>sub-teneō</i>), <i>I hold up from underneath, sustain.</i>
ob-tineō,	<i>I hold (against opposition), I maintain.</i>

The prefixes in the compounds given above are of very great use in Latin word-making. Learn their meanings. Notice that when the stem of a verb compounded with one of these prefixes contains a short *a* or *e*, that vowel is changed to short *i* (*e.g.* *capiō*, *re-cipiō*, *teneō*, *con-tineō*). Notice also that the final consonant of the prefix is sometimes changed to suit the initial consonant of the word with which it is used (*e.g.* *ex-ferō* for *ec-ferō*, *dis-ferō* for *dis-ferō*, *sus-tineō* for *sub-tineō*).

NOTE. — There are other ways of making compounds, as *iūs-iūrandum*, *oath*, from *iūs*, *right*, *law*, and *iūrandum*, the gerundive of the verb *iūrō*, *to swear*. The composition of such words is explained, as they occur, in the special vocabularies from this point to the end of the book.

293. In the compound words given above, each part retains the meaning it has as a separate word. So, for instance, *eō* is a verb, *go*, and *ex-eō* is also a verb, *go out*. But words are made from other words by *derivation*, as well as by *composition*. Notice *amō*, *love*, *amicus*, *friendly*

or *friend*, *amicitia*, *friendship*. Here *amō* is a verb, *amicus* an adjective (used also as a noun), and *amicitia* a noun. Yet all evidently belong together in meaning, and all contain the root *am-*.

294. Examine the following : —

imperō (stem <i>imperā-</i>), <i>I command</i> .	imperātor (<i>-ōris, m.</i>), <i>commander, general</i> .
vincō (stem <i>vic-</i>), <i>I conquer</i> .	victor (<i>-ōris, m.</i>), <i>conqueror, victor</i> .

295. RULE. — *The ending -tor added to verb stems forms masculine nouns denoting the agent or doer of an action.*

NOTE. — The verb stem is most easily found for this purpose by removing the ending of the supine. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the ending of the noun is *-sor* instead of *-tor*; as, *dēfendō* (supine *dēfēnsūm*), *defend*, *dēfēnsor*, *defender*. Verb stems are sometimes changed in the supine very much as noun stems of the third declension are changed when the nominative ending is added (**52.5; 55**).

296. Examine the following : —

dē-dō (supine <i>dēditum</i>), <i>I surrender</i> .	dēdī-tiō (<i>-ōnis, f.</i>), <i>surrender</i> .
mūnīō (supine <i>mūnitum</i>), <i>I fortify</i> .	mūnī-tiō (<i>-ōnis, f.</i>), <i>fortification</i> .
ad-venīō (supine <i>adventum</i>), <i>I come to, arrive</i> .	adventus (<i>-ūs, m.</i>), <i>arrival</i> .

297. RULE. — *The endings -tiō and -tus, added to verb stems, form abstract nouns expressing action.*

NOTE. — The endings *-iō* (*-ōnis, f.*) and *-tūra* (*-ae, f.*) are used in the same way. If the supine of the verb ends in *-sum*, the endings are *-siō*, *-sus*, and *-sūra*; as, *ūtor* (deponent, p.p. *ūsus*), *I use*, *ūsus* (*-ūs, m.*), *use*.

298. Examine the following:—

miles (stem milit-), <i>soldier</i> .	milit-ia (-ae, f.), <i>military service</i> .
amicus (stem amico-), <i>friend</i> .	amici-tia (-ae, f.), <i>friendship</i> .
celer (stem celeri-), <i>quick</i> .	celeri-tās (-tātis, f.), <i>quickness</i> .
vir (stem viro-), <i>man</i> .	vir-tūs (-tūtis, f.), <i>manliness, virtue, courage</i> .
māgnus (stem māgno-), <i>great</i> .	māgni-tūdō (-tūdinis, f.), <i>greatness, size</i> .

299. RULE.—The endings **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō**, added to adjective and noun stems, form feminine abstract nouns expressing quality.

NOTE.—A final *o* of the stem is regularly changed to *i* before these endings (as **amico-**, **amicitia**). In **virtūs**, formed from the stem **viro-**, the *o* is dropped. Occasionally the stem is slightly changed in some other way, as in **facultās**, *ability*, from stem **facili-** of **facilis**, *easy*.

300. Adjectives are formed in Latin as in English from nouns (nominal adjectives) and from verbs (verbal adjectives). So few derived adjectives are used in this book that only a few endings can be given here.

The endings **-ānus**, **-ēnus**, **-īnus**, added to noun stems minus their final vowel, form adjectives with the sense of *belonging to*; as, **Rōma**, *Rome*, **Rōmānus**, *Roman*; **alius**, *another*, **aliēnus**, *belonging to another or to others, foreign*.

The endings **-ilis** and **-ibilis** added to verb stems form adjectives denoting passive qualities; as, **faciō**, *do*, **facilis**, *doable, easy*; **crēdō**, *believe*, **crēd-i-bilis**, *to be believed, credible*.

301. Verbs are sometimes derived from noun or adjective stems; as, **liberō**, *set free*, from the stem of **liber**, *free*;—sometimes from verb stems. Most verbs

of the first conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *a* or *o* (first or second declension), and many verbs of the fourth conjugation are formed from noun or adjective stems in *i* (third declension). Some verbs of the second and third conjugations, also, are formed from noun and adjective stems.



CHAPTER LIV.

Subjunctive Mood.

Sequence of Tenses; Indirect Question.

302. Learn the subjunctive mood of *sum* (p. 233).

What must be added to the present infinitive to form the imperfect subjunctive? How does the perfect subjunctive differ from the future perfect indicative? What must be added to the perfect infinitive to form the perfect subjunctive?

303. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. **Reperiō ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I am finding out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
2. **Reperiam ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I shall find out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
3. **Reppererō ubi sis, ubi fueris,** *I shall have found out where you are, where you have been (or were).*
4. **Reperiēbam ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs,** *I was finding out where you were, where you had been.*

5. **Repperī ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I found out where you were, where you had been.**
6. **Reppereram ubi essēs, ubi fuissēs, I had found out where you were, where you had been.**

The tenses of the principal clauses of the first three examples — the present, the future, and the future perfect — are called *primary* or *principal* tenses. The tenses of the principal clauses of the last three examples — the imperfect, the perfect and the pluperfect — are called *secondary* or *historical* tenses.

In the subjunctive, the present and perfect are primary; the imperfect and pluperfect, secondary.

To which class of tenses, primary or secondary, do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the first three examples belong?

To which class do the verbs of the subordinate clauses of the last three examples belong?

304. RULE. — *Primary tenses of the indicative are followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive, and secondary tenses by secondary tenses.*

305. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Quis est tuus comes?**
Who is your companion?
2. **Ubi erās?** *Where were you?*
3. **Cūr āfuisti?** *Why were you absent?*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

1. **Sciō quis sit tuus comes,** *I know who your companion is.*
2. **Audiī ubi essēs,** *I heard where you were.*
3. **Repperī cūr abessēs,** *I found out why you were absent.*

Observe (1) that each dependent clause in the examples begins with an interrogative word; (2) that while it has not the form of a question, it gives the substance of the question

opposite; (3) that it depends upon a verb, either as subject or object. Such clauses are called *indirect questions*.

Notice the mood of indirect questions.

306. RULE. — *The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.*

307.

VOCABULARY.

finitimus, -a, -um, neighbor-
ing; *as noun*, neighbor,
(*fini-*, stem of *finis*, *adj.*
ending -timus).

Procillus, -i, m., Procillus.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land.

ūsus, -ūs, m., advantage, use,
experience.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, urge, exhort.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum,
(*Inter* and *legō*), under-
stand.

persequor, -sequī, -secūtus,
pursue.

**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
situm,** ask, inquire about.

308.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ubi fueris proximā nocte intellegere nōn possum. 2. Cūr domī nōn essēs mirābātur. 3. Māter intellegit quid liberis ūsuī sit. 4. Iūlia patriam omnibus terrīs praefert. 5. Post bellum patria nostra secundis rēbus ūsa est. 6. Magister ā mē quaesivit cūr āfuissem. 7. Quae causa dolōris esset mirātus est. 8. Procillus in ipsum Caesarem hostem equitatū persequentem incidit. 9. Nauta Iūliam sibi uxōrī dēlēgit. 10. Dumnorix et domī et in finitimīs cīvitātibus multōs amīcōs habēbat. 11. Centuriō suōs hortātus expectantibus¹ signum dat. 12. Puerī quī trāns flūmen fūgerunt nōlunt dicere ubi fuerint.

II. 1. He asks me why I was absent so long. 2. Cicero was made consul by the Romans when forty-two years old. 3. I will endeavor to be just to every one.² 4. You ought to go home early every day. 5. Your parents

¹ See 51, note.

² With iustus use in with acc., not dative.

know where you are. 6. Your parents knew where you were. 7. After the departure of my friends I returned home. 8. Everybody prefers to go from the city in summer. 9. My father understands what books are agreeable to me. 10. They threw their arms to the ground and fled. 11. We wish to be useful to our neighbors.



CHAPTER LV.

First Conjugation : Subjunctive Active.*Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses).*

309. Learn the subjunctive active of *amō*,
Inflect the subjunctive of *nārrō*, *vāstō*, *occupō*, *cōlō*.

310. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. *Lēgātum mittit ut agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant that he may lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
2. *Lēgātum mittit quī (ut is) agrōs vāstet*, he sends a lieutenant who is to lay waste, in order to lay waste, to lay waste, the fields.
3. *Ex duce petunt nē agrōs vāstet*, they ask the commander that he may not lay waste, not to lay waste, the fields.

Notice the various English equivalents of the subordinate clauses beginning with *ut*, *nē*, and *quī*, and also the mood of the verbs which follow these particles.

What is the difference in meaning between *ut* and *nē*?

Ut . . . vāstet, *quī . . . vāstet*, and *nē . . . vāstet* express the purpose of the action of the principal verb. Such clauses are called *clauses of purpose (final clauses)*.

311. RULE. — *The subjunctive with ut, nē, or a relative is used to express purpose (final clauses).*

CAUTION. — The rule for sequence of tenses given in the last chapter must be observed in clauses of purpose (final clauses).

312.

VOCABULARY.

mors, mortis, *f.*, death.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum,
(con and gnōscō), find out.

moneō, -ēre, monui, monitum,
advise, warn.

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -līc-
tum, leave.

remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, *no*
supine; *fut. part.*, remān-

sūrus, (re and maneō),
remain.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.

ut, *conj.*, that, in order that.

nē, *conj.*, that not, in order that
not.

313.

EXERCISES ON FORMS.

I. 1. Eum mittit ut vāstet, occupet, iuвет. 2. Eōs mittit ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 3. Eum mīsit ut vāstāret, occupāret, iuvāret. 4. Eōs mittet ut vāstent, occupent, iuvent. 5. Eōs monet nē cēlent, properent, vītent, liberent. 6. Eum monēbat nē cēlāret, properāret, vītāret, liberāret.

II. 1. He advises them to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 2. He was advising them not to carry, hasten, adorn, set free. 3. He sent cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free. 4. He will send cavalry to assist, to attack, to set free.

314.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Labiēnus trāns flūmen māgnās cōpiās mīsit quae mūnitum locum occupārent. 2. Caesar quaesivit quot Germānī in Galliā essent. 3. Quaerit quā dē causā sē

vitāverim. 4. Mors clārī poētae dolōrī cīvibus erat. 5. Cūstōdēs captīvōs ad montem fugientēs persequēbantur. 6. Iūssit mulierēs et liberōs ex oppidō exīre ut iniūriam vitārent. 7. Periculī temporibus sociīs auxilium ferre dēbēmus. 8. Trēs legiōnēs reliquit ut oppidum ab impetū hostium tūtum esset. 9. Imperātor mē monet ut domī hiemem. 10. Cōgnōscēmus ubi arma tua cēlāveris. 11. Māior nātū filius domō discēdere, minor remanēre māvult.

II. 1. He did not know why I was avoiding him. 2. I will see who is in the garden. 3. He advised his son to conceal his plan. 4. He sent his servant to carry grain to his horse. 5. We shall return home at¹ the beginning of summer to assist our parents. 6. The old man urged his son to return home with the utmost speed. 7. He told me why he was hurrying. 8. We shall warn the Helvetians not to attack the towns of our neighbors. 9. I prefer the city where I was born to this (city). 10. We were unable to find the cause (what was the cause) of the boy's death. 11. My mother thinks that I am safer on land.

315.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 41-47.]

Septimō diē postquam (*after*) Vesontiōne castra mōta erant ab explōrātōribus nūntiātum est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse. Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit qui eum in colloquium vocārent. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Ad colloquium Caesar decimae legiōnis militēs, quōs sibi

¹ Primā aestāte.

fidissimōs habēbat, in equōs positōs sēcum dūxit. Per eōs Caesar Ariovistum prohibēre voluit nē sē interficere cōnārētur (imperf. subj. of *cōnor*). In colloquiō Ariovistus summā arrogantīā (*the greatest arrogance*) ūsus est equitēsque quī cum eō vēnerant in Rōmānōs lapidēs telaque iēcērunt. Caesar cum militibus suis in castra sē recēpit, neque iterum (*again*) vocātus in colloquium ire volēbat, quod sine periculō sē facere posse nōn putābat, sed Gāium Valerium Procillum et Mārcum Metium mīsit. Hīs mandāvit (*commissioned*) ut quae diceret (*said*, imperf. subj. of *dīcō*) Ariovistus sibi nūntiarent. Hōs Ariovistus dīcere cōnantēs prohibuit et in catēnās (*fetters, chains*) coniēcīt (*threw*).



CHAPTER LVI.

First Conjugation : Subjunctive Passive.

Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses).

316. Learn the subjunctive passive of *amō*.

317. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- 1. Puer tam dēfessus fuit ut eum iuvārem, the boy was so tired that I helped him.**
- 2. Puer ita fēcīt ut nōn amārētur, the boy acted so that he was not loved.**
- 3. Germānī tam fortēs erant ut tōtus exercitus perturbārētur, the Germans were so brave that all the army was disturbed.**

4. **Nēmō tam bonus est quī ab omnibus amātur, no one is so good that he is loved by all.**

The clauses beginning with *ut* and *quī* in these sentences denote result (consecutive clauses). Observe that they are the same in form as purpose clauses, except that *ut nōn* is used instead of *nē* in negative sentences.

318. RULE. — *The subjunctive with ut, ut nōn, or a relative, is used to express result.*

319.

VOCABULARY.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change.	sūspiciō, -ōnis, f., suspicion.
inimicus, -i, m., (in and amicus), a person unfriendly, an enemy.	timor, -ōris, m., fear.
mēns, mentis, f., mind.	tantus, -a, -um, so great.
pōns, pontis, m., bridge.	dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.
	ita, adv., so.

320.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Eādem cōpiās quae ad portum cōnsēderant praesidiō nāvibus reliquit. 2. Iter tam difficile erat ut eōdem diē redire nōn cōnārēmur. 3. Eā pecuniā ita utēmini ut¹ aliis prōsitis. 4. Tantus timor tōtū exercitū occupāvit ut omnium mentēs animique perturbārentur. 5. Caesar ducēs militum convōcāvit ut dēliberārent quid optimum esset. 6. Adventū auxiliōrum tanta commūtātiō facta est ut nēmō in hostēs impetum facere dubitāret. 7. Omnēs finitimōs cōgnōscere volumus. 8. Caesar terrā marique² inimicōs bellum sibi inferentēs persequēbātur. 9. Pōns in Rhodanō plūribus³ ante annis factus erat. 10. Ex captivīs cōgnōvit quī cum Cicerōne

¹ Ita ut prōsitis, so that you may (or will) benefit, so as to benefit.

² In this phrase in is regularly omitted.

³ Several.

deliberāvissent. 11. Dux milites hortatus est ut timōris suspiciōnem vitarent.

II. 1. He fortifies the camp that it may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 2. The town was so fortified that it was not taken by the enemy. 3. The judge was so just that he was praised by all his fellow-citizens. 4. Cicero did not think that death was the end of the soul. 5. He exhorted his sons to avoid bad company. 6. My friend warned me not to spend the winter in Britain. 7. The general understood why I hesitated to remain in camp. 8. The seashore was so pleasant that the boys were delighted. 9. The recruit is made brave by daily experience in (of the) camp. 10. The consul was disturbed in mind and spirit by the suspicion of his enemies.



CHAPTER LVII.

Second Conjugation : Subjunctive Mood.

Purpose and Result Clauses. — Continued.

321. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of habeo.

322. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Verbs of Fearing.

1. Veretur ut locum occupet, he fears that he will not get possession of the place.
2. Veretur ne hostes locum occupent, he fears that the enemy will get possession of the place.

3. *Timēbat nē amīcū vulnerāret, he was afraid he might wound his friend.*
4. *Timēmus ut in urbem vēnerit, we fear he has not come to the city.*

Observe that in these sentences *ut* is translated with *not* and *nē* without it.

323. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Clauses after Quīn.

1. *Nōn dubitō quīn amōtur, I do not doubt that he is loved.*
2. *Nōn abest suspiciō quīn vērū cēlet, the suspicion is not wanting that he is concealing the truth.*
3. *Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn vērū esset, they did not doubt that it was true.*
4. *Nōn dubium erat quīn hostēs vēniissent, there was no doubt that the enemy had come.*

324. VOCABULARY.

mīlitia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , military service.	cōstituō , -ere, -stituī, -stitū-
voluntās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , will, good will.	tum , arrange, decide.
dignus , -a, -um, (<i>with abl.</i>),	proficiscor , -ī, profectus , set
worthy.	out.
dubius , -a, -um, doubtful, (<i>cf.</i>	contrā (<i>prep. with acc.</i>), against.
Eng. dubious).	quīn , <i>conj.</i> , that, but that.

325. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. *Nēmō dubitāre dēbet quīn nostrī cīvēs prō patriā fortiter pūnent.* 2. *Pater timet ut filius valeat.*
3. *Timēbat ut comes fidē dignus esset.* 4. *Nōn est dubium quīn iuvenis fidē dignus sit.* 5. *Num potest quisquam dubitāre quīn Ītalia poētārum et imperātōrum sit patria?*
6. *Suspiciō nōn abest quīn in Ītaliā remaneat ut militiam*

vitet. 7. Quaeris a nobis cur ita hoc homine delectemur. 8. Constituit post mortem patris domum relinquere et in urbem ire. 9. Contra voluntatem meam accidit ut ex urbe proficisci pararem. 10. Pater filium domum relinquente[m] monuit ut malos comites vitaret.

II. 1. We feared that Ariovistus intended¹ to remain. 2. It happened that I remained at home. 3. So great was the fear of our soldiers that they did not sustain the attack of the enemies' cavalry. 4. We will find out how many bridges over the Rhone remain. 5. He did not doubt that his neighbors were safe. 6. So great a change in (of) affairs was made in a few months that his enemies were greatly disturbed. 7. The lieutenant wished to lead his infantry across the bridge and encamp upon the hill. 8. He feared that his soldiers would not obey. 9. There is no doubt that my brother is present. 10. The general fears that the minds and feelings of the recruits (new soldiers) will be disturbed by the approach of the enemy.

326.

READING LESSON.

[CAESAR, *Gallie War*, I. 48.]

Eodem die Ariovistus castra prœmōvit (*moved forward, prœ and mōvit*) et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub (*under, at the foot of*) monte cōnsēdit. Posterō diē praeter (*past*) Caesaris castra suās cōpiās dūxit et milibus passuum duobus ūltrā (*beyond*) eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō ut frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduis portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet (*shut off*). Ex eō diē diēs continuōs (*successive*) quīnque Caesar

¹ *Esset in animō.* Cf. *Orgetorigi in animō erat*, 171.

prō castris suās cōpiās ēdūxit ut Ariovistō potestātem pūgnandī (*of fighting*, gerund of *pūgnō*) daret. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equitātū cottidiē proelium commisit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae (*of fight*), quō sē Germānī exercuerant (*had trained*). Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem (*just so many*) numerō peditēs vėlōcissimī ac fortissimī. Cum hīs in proelia equitēs ibant. Ad eōs sē recipiebant. Hi in periculīs equitēs iuvābant, et tanta erat eōrum celeritās ut nōn minus vėlōciter quam equī currerent (imperf. subj. of *currō*).



CHAPTER LVIII.

Imperative Constructions.

Wishes.

327. Learn the present imperative of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, *nōlō*.

328. Imperative constructions include all kinds of commands, requests, and permissions. The following are the most common:—

POSITIVE.

NEGATIVE.

- | | | |
|----|--|---|
| 1. | properēmus, <i>let us hurry.</i> | nē properēmus, <i>let us not hurry.</i> |
| 2. | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">properā, <i>hurry,</i></div>
 <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">or</div>
 <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">properēs, <i>you (one) must</i></div>
 <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"><i>hurry.</i></div> </div> | <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">nōlī properāre,</div>
 <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">or</div>
 <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">nē properāveris,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em; margin: 0 10px;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">do not hurry.</div> |

POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
3.	properet,	{	nē properet,
	or		or
	properāverit,		nē properāverit,
	<i>let him</i>		<i>let him not</i>
	<i>hurry,</i>		<i>hurry,</i>
	or		or
	<i>he shall</i>		<i>he shall not</i>
	<i>hurry.</i>		<i>hurry.</i>

329. Commands, requests, and permissions are expressed by the subjunctive, except in the second person, and in the second person they may be expressed by the subjunctive.

1. The second person of the subjunctive in positive commands is rarely used except when the subject is *you* in the sense of *one* or *people*.

2. Negative commands of the second person are expressed by *nōli* (*nōlīte*) with the present infinitive, or by the present or perfect subjunctive with *nē*.

3. Notice that in imperative sentences there is no difference in the translation between the present and the perfect subjunctive.

4. Notice that *nē* is the negative in imperative sentences.

330. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

(*Utinam*) *bonus sis*, may you be good.

Utinam bonus essēs, would you were good.

Utinam bonus fuissēs, would you had been good.

(*Utinam*) *nē malus sis*, may you not be bad.

(*Utinam*) *nē malus essēs*, would you were not bad.

(*Utinam*) *nē malus fuissēs*, would you had not been bad.

Notice that *utinam* is sometimes translated, and sometimes merely shows that the sentence in which it occurs is a wish. Notice, also, that *utinam* may usually be omitted in Latin. Notice that when the wish refers to the future the present

subjunctive, when it refers to the present the imperfect, and when it refers to the past the pluperfect, is used. When the wish refers to the present or past, it is unfulfilled. Compare the subjunctive in conditions, 337-340. Observe that the negative is *nē*.

331. RULE. — *Wishes are expressed by the subjunctive, often introduced by utinam. The negative is nē. Wishes referring to the future take the present tense, unfulfilled wishes referring to the present take the imperfect, and referring to the past the pluperfect.*

332.

VOCABULARY.

pecus , -oris, <i>n.</i> , flock.	cūrō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take
antiquus , -a, -um, ancient.	care, cause.
nūllus , -a, -um, no, no one.	soleō , -ēre, solitus , (semi-dep.)
audeō , -ēre, ausus, (<i>dep. in</i>	be accustomed.
<i>perf., plup., and fut. perf.</i>),	trānseō , -ire, -ii, -itum, (<i>trāns</i>
dare .	<i>and eō</i>), go across, cross.
cōgitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	vivō , -ere, vixī , victum , live.
think.	utinam , O that, would that.

333.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. *Properā, mī fili, domum redire.* 2. *Librōs, discipulī, domum vōbiscum nē portāveritis.* 3. *Nē quisquam hunc hostem timuerit.* 4. *Nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longās epistulās scribere.* 5. *Cūrā ut vir dignus patre sis et cōgitā quō in locō stēs.* 6. *Semper audēte vērā dicere.* 7. *Nē solitī sitis hunc agrum trānsire.* 8. *Nūlli erat dubium quīn arma contrā Caesarem parārentur.* 9. *Antiquī Germānī nōn multum frumentō sed māgnā ex parte¹ pecore vivēbant.* 10. *Nōn tam ācer civis sum ut putem militiam esse semper grātam.* 11. *Dēbēmus ita*

¹ *In great part, largely.*

vivere ut aliis prōsimus. 12. Nē milītēs dē mortis periculō cōgitāverint. 13. Utinam māter adesset. 14. Utinam domō āfuissem.

II. 1. The minds of the soldiers were seized with so great fear that they were thrown into disorder. 2. The general feared that his speech might be too long. 3. He decided to go (set out) to Britain to avoid wrong from (of) his enemies. 4. I do not doubt that the bridge is safe. 5. Send the boy home. 6. Do not send the boy home. 7. Let the soldiers avoid the suspicion of fear. 8. Let us not fear the enemy. 9. These boys so act that they are loved by everybody. 10. Cæsar had perceived the good will of Divitiacus towards himself. 11. He wished to drive his flock to a safe place. 12. No one¹ doubts that the ancient Germans were brave. 13. May they not dare to cross.



CHAPTER LIX.

Third Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive; Conditional Sentences.

334. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of dūcō.

335. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Sī adest, laetī sumus, *if he is present, we are glad.*

Sī aderat, laetī erāmus, *if he was present, we were glad.*

¹ See I. 8.

SI aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

SI adfuit, laetī fuimus, *if he was (has been) present, we were (have been) glad.*

Notice that each sentence consists of two clauses,—a condition introduced by *si* (if), and a conclusion. The truth of the conclusion depends upon the truth of the condition. Such sentences are called *conditional sentences*.

Notice that in the sentences given above nothing is implied as to the truth of the assertions. It is simply stated that *if* the condition is (was, shall be) true, the conclusion is (was, shall be) true. Such conditions are called *simple conditions*. Notice the mood of the verbs.

Notice that in simple future conditions the future tense is used when in English we use the present.

NOTE.—Conditions referring to action completed in past time are in the pluperfect; as, *si adfuerat, if he had (at some previous time) been present.* But these do not often occur.

Sometimes a future conclusion depends upon a condition which will already belong to past time when the conclusion shall or may become true; as, *If I come, I shall go back.* I evidently cannot go back until after I have come; the condition therefore refers to the past; but the whole sentence refers to the future, therefore the condition must refer to the past and the future at once, *i.e.* must be in the future perfect tense, *si vēnerō, redībō.*

336. RULE.—*In simple conditional sentences the indicative is used in both condition and conclusion.*

337. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

SI aderit, laetī erimus, *if he is (shall be) present, we shall be glad.*

SI adsit laetī simus, *if he should be present, we should be glad.*

Notice that these sentences refer to the future. The second differs from the first only in being *less vivid*, implying that the

speaker is in doubt, or is unwilling to make a plain, simple statement. Notice the moods and tenses. Compare 330, 331.

338. RULE. — *Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both clauses.*

NOTE. — The form of the less vivid condition corresponding to the future perfect indicative of the simple (more vivid) condition (see 335, note) is the perfect subjunctive, *si vñnerim, redeam*, if I should come (have come), I should go back.

339. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

Si adesset, laeti essēmus, if he were present, we should be glad.

Si adfuisset, laeti fuissēmus, if he had been present, we should have been glad.

Notice that in these sentences the condition is supposed to be untrue. Such conditions are called *conditions contrary to fact*. Notice the mood and the tenses of the verbs. Compare 330, 331.

340. RULE. — *In conditions contrary to fact the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both clauses, the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past time.*

341. VOCABULARY.

opus, operis, n., work.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, report, [*pref. re- + nūntiō*].

resistō, -ere, restiti (no supine), resist, [*pref. re- + sistō (reduplicated form from stō, stand)*].

<p><i>revertor, revertī, reversus sum,</i> <i>revertō, -ere, -revertī, re- versum.</i></p>	}	<p>return, go back. [<i>re-again, + ver- tor, turn</i>]. The deponent forms are used chiefly in the present, imperf. and fut., the active forms in the perf., pluperf., and fut. perf.</p>
--	---	--

quis, quae (qua), quid, indef. pron., any, any one, one.

qui, qua (quae), quod, indef. pron., any (see 226).

sī, conj., if.

nisi, conj., if not, unless, [nī (for nē) + sī (with shortened vowel)].

342.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Si māgnū pecoris numerum in castris habent, inopiā superārī nōn possunt. 2. Si revertētur ut nobis resistat, tertiō diē pūgnābimus. 3. Si dīgnus essēs quī¹ Rōmānus appellārēris, hostibus resisterēs. 4. Si tanta erat operis altitūdō, hostibus facile resistere poterant. 5. Lēgātus nisi interfectus erit, in Ītaliā revertētur ut cōsulī haec renūntiet. 6. Si quis barbaris restitit, nōn dubium est quī interfectus sit. 7. Milītēs nisi castra dēfendere poterunt, nōn dubium est quī omnēs fugiant. 8. Si flūmen trānsiit ut in oppidum fugeret, nōn dubitō quī vivat; sī domī remānsit, interfectus est. 9. Si vērū est quod explōrātōrēs renūntiāvērunt, hostēs ad castra venīre nōn ausī sunt. 10. Si equitēs Rhēnum trānsiērunt ut locī nātūrā cōgnōscerent, peditēs apud flūmen remānsērunt quī pontem dēfenderent.

II. 1. If one dares to resist, there is no danger. 2. No pain is so great that it cannot be borne if one wishes to bear it. 3. I do not doubt that the soldiers have returned to the work. 4. If you have determined to go against the enemy, you ought to think of the safety of the flocks. 5. If any dare not remain, let them return² home. 6. If the soldiers have not fled, the enemy have not taken the camp. 7. If you wish (use *volō*), you may return on the

¹ Cf. 317, 4.

² In Latin, as in English, the conclusion of a conditional sentence sometimes takes the form of a command, which must be expressed by the proper part of the verb. See Chapter LVIII.

fifth day. 8. The ancient Romans were accustomed to bear the toil of military service with the greatest goodwill in order that they might deserve (be worthy) to be praised. 9. May you take care to answer truly (true things). 10. If you do not dare to resist the enemy, I fear you are not worthy to return to military service. 11. If any are accustomed to think of their own safety, they are not worthy to be called soldiers.

III. 1. Nisi m̄gnum pecoris numerum in castris habuissent, inopiā superātī essent. 2. Si quis nōbīs resistere audēbit, interficiētur. 3. Imperātor sī in castra revertātur, summā militum voluntāte contrā hostēs proficiēcātur. 4. Caesar sī adfuisset, pūgnāvisset; sī pūgnāvisset, hostēs superāvisset; sī hostēs superāvisset, Galliam occupāvisset. 5. Si vēra captīvus respondit, mīlitēs fortiter opus dēfendērunt. 6. Nisi quis dē hostium adventū nūntiāvisset, castra nostra capta essent. 7. Captīvus nisi vēra respondisset, statim ā mīlitibus interfectus esset. 8. Nisi Labiēnus ante sōlis occāsum revertātur, mīlitēs longō labōre dēfessī dē dēditione cōgitent. 9. Mīlitēs sī statim ē castris edūcantur, hostibus fortiter resistant. 10. Si ante sextam hōram in urbem cōsul vēnerit, prīmā noctis vigiliā contrā hostēs ire properābimus. 11. Utinam nē cum Germānīs proelium commīsisset.

IV. 1. If we do not take possession of the bridge, we shall not be able to cross the river. 2. If the soldiers who were in the town had not been frightened, they would not have fled. 3. If you should try to avoid death, you would not deserve (be worthy) to be called brave. 4. The forces of the enemy are so great that they would take the town if our men were not resisting

bravely. 5. If the place had not been surrounded by a wall, we should not have dared to remain. 6. If the Romans had not been tired by (their) work, they would have remained at the bridge to resist the Germans. 7. We shall not be able to return to camp unless some one comes to aid us (to us as an aid) before sunset. 8. If the foot-soldiers should run quickly to the river, they would seize the bridge. 9. If the general had not led out the soldiers from the camp into line of battle, the enemy would have set out for home on that day. 10. If the Gauls should make an attack upon our men, they would betake themselves to the camp.

343.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 49.]

Ubi (*when*) Ariovistum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellexit, nē diūtius (compar. of *diū*) commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā (*beyond*) eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant circiter passūs sēscentōs ab eis, castris idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici (*triple*) instrūctā (perf. pass. part. of *instruō*)¹ ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sēscentōs, uti (*as*) dictum est, aberat. Eō (*thither*) circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita (*unencumbered, in fighting trim*) cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne (*from fortification*)

¹ *Acie triplici instrūctā*, a triple line being drawn up, i.e. having formed a triple line. So below, *mūnitis castris*, the camp having been fortified, i.e. when the camp was fortified. See Chapter LXII., Ablative Absolute.

prohibērent. Caesar, ut (*as*) ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre (*drive off*), tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Castris mūnītis¹ duās ibi (*there*) legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit (*led back*).



CHAPTER LX.

Fourth Conjugation: Subjunctive Active and Passive.

Clauses with Cum.

344. Learn the subjunctive active and passive of *audiō*.

345. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum cīvitās bellum infert, ducēs dēliguntur, when the state begins a war, leaders are chosen.

cum haec legēs, aderō, when you read (i.e. shall read) this, I shall be present.

oppidum Britannī vocant, cum silvās mūniērunt, the Britons call it a town, when they have fortified the woods.

cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs, when you come (i.e. shall have come), you will find out.

Observe the mood and tenses.

346. RULE. — *Cum* meaning when (*cum temporal*) takes the indicative to define a time.

¹ See p. 171, note.

347. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum esset Caesar in Galliā, lēgātī vēnērunt, *when Cæsar was in Gaul, envoys came.*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est, *when that was (i.e. had been) announced to Cæsar, he set out from the city.*

348. RULE. — *In narrative, cum meaning when or as (cum historical) takes the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to describe a time.*

NOTE. — The indicative is used with **cum** when a *date* is given, the subjunctive when a *situation* or *circumstance* is given involving the idea of time. Generally dates are given in primary tenses, and therefore **cum** with the imperfect and pluperfect indicative is rare. When a time is *described*, the tenses used are naturally secondary, hence the use of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive with **cum** in narrative.

349. VOCABULARY.

Britannus, -ī, *m.*, a Briton, inhabitant of Britain.

magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate, magistracy [*stem of magister* (master) + *a* (as if from a verb of first conj.) + *tus*].

mūnitō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification [*mūni* (of *mūnīō*) + *tō*].

cum, *conj.*, when, as, since, although.

tamen, *conj.*, nevertheless, still, however.

contendō, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, contend, struggle, hasten [*pref. con* + *tendō*, stretch].

pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come through, arrive [*per* + *venīō*].

vincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum, conquer.

bene, *adv.*, well.

350. EXERCISES.

- I. 1. Ad amīcōs, cum ūsus est, Gallī sē recipiunt.
2. Caesar cum Helvētiōs vīcisset, multōs annōs cum aliīs bellum gerēbat.
3. Helvētīī cum omnia cōstituissent, Orgetorigem ducem dēlēgerunt.
4. Ille cum dux

dēlectus esset, Dumnorīgem addūxit ut rēgnū occupāre cōnārētur. 5. Cum magistrātūs multitudinem hominū ex agrīs cōgerent, Orgetorīgis mors eis nūntiāta est. 6. Barbarī cum oppidū cēperunt, incolās interficiunt. 7. Dux cum hostēs vicerit exercitū dīmittet nisi ei ā senātū imperātū erit ut cum Germānīs bellū gerat. 8. Si vīs domū revertī, cūrā ut respondeās. 9. Ea rēs cum imperātōri renūntiāta esset, in castrīs milītēs dēfessōs continuisset nisi veritus esset nē Germānī ad Rhēnū pervenirent. 10. Britanni antīquī pecoribus et frūmentō vivere solēbant. 11. Si hostēs dē periculō cōgitant, nullī flūmen trānsire audēbunt.

II. 1. When the soldiers heard the shout, they hastened into the city. 2. When the enemy had fortified the camp, they led out their forces into line of battle. 3. If the work of the fortification is done, cross the river and resist the enemy. 4. When the general himself heard the enemy coming, he gave the signal to the soldiers. 5. When an army arrives at a suitable place for a camp, they surround themselves with a fortification that they may be safe from the attack of the enemy. 6. When the shout of (those) fighting was heard in the camp, the soldiers hastened to the river. 7. When the camp had been fortified, the magistrates of the Gauls returned to Labienus to ask for (seek) peace. 8. Do not resist the enemy, lest they hasten to cross the Rhine and return home. 9. When the cavalry return, they will quickly make an end of the battle. 10. When the Helvetians had already made their way through the territory of the Sequanians, they arrived in the territory of our allies.

351. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

cum haec vĕra sint, bene est, *since these things are true, it is well.*

cum dĕfessus essem, domĭ manĕbam, *since I was tired, I staid at home.*

cum adessem, mĕ nōn vĭdistĭ, *although I was present, you did not see me.*

hĕc cum audierim, nōn crĕdĕ, *although I have heard this, I do not believe it.*

352. RULE. — *Cum* causal and concessive (meaning since and although) takes the subjunctive in all tenses.

353. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Militēs cum proeliō superātī essent, tamen nōn fūgērunt. 2. Hostēs cum dux interfectus esset in castra sē recēpērunt. 3. Cum māgna pars aestātis reliqua sit, in Britanniam profectus est. 4. Cum vīvāmus, laetī sīmus. 5. Cum vēnerit nūntius novās rēs cōgnōscēmus. 6. Explōrātor cum multās rēs repperisset tamen nihil re-nūntiāre ausus est. 7. Haec cum bene fēcisset, laudātus est. 8. Dux cum multa bene fēcisset, tamen ab inimicis accūsātus est. 9. Cum timōris sūspiciōnem vitāveris fortem esse tē dicimus. 10. Militēs, cum nēmō sine vulnere esset, tamen ad noctem resistēbant.

II. 1. Although he was of small stature (body), he was a brave general. 2. Since he had arrived at the city, he determined to remain. 3. Since the magistrates have come, let us hasten to go to the council. 4. Although the Britons have been conquered, I shall not return to Gaul. 5. Since the fortifications are high, we can easily resist the enemy. 6. Since you have come to

me, I will lead you to a safe place. 7. Although the soldiers are fighting sharply, they cannot overcome the enemy. 8. Since a great change of circumstances (things) has been brought about (made), let us seek safety in flight. 9. Although Cæsar had led out his legions into line of battle, the enemy remained in their camp. 10. Since the Gauls did not come against us, we returned into the fortifications.



CHAPTER LXI.

Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs.

Indirect Discourse.

354. Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *possum*, *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *eō*, *fiō*, and *ferō*.

Review the rules for simple indirect discourse (p. 119).

355.

VOCABULARY.

imperium, -i, *n.*, command, rule, power, sway, [**imper** (*of imperō*, command) + abstract ending -i-um].

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate.

pūgna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

turris, -is (*acc. -im*), *f.*, tower.

etiam, *conj.*, even, also, [**et** + **iam**].

cōnfiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, finish, wear out (*esp. in perf. pass. partic.*) [**con** + **faciō**].

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, consider, [**ēx** + **aes-timō**, compute (*ae weakened to ī*)].

356.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Nūntius respondit turrim iam cōfectam esse.
 2. Sī scribere potuisset, Britannōs ad urbis portam ventūrōs esse scripsisset. 3. Etiam cum ē mūnitiōne exirēmus, hostēs pūgnātūrōs esse nōn existimābāmus.
 4. Caesarī renūntiābātur militēs vulneribus iam cōfectōs esse. 5. Caesar cum cōgnovisset Britannōs iam victōs esse, ad castra mūnitiōnēque pervenire contendit.
 6. Galli etiam sī Caesaris imperium ferre nōlissent, tamen resistere nōn potuissent. 7. Sī celeriter castra fiant hostibus resistere possimus. 8. Nisi ad opus revertī quam in pūgnā manēre māluissestis facile hostēs vicissētis. 9. Lēgātus dicēbat sē tertiō diē ad suōs ventūrum esse. 10. Sī quis dicet sē pūgnam vidisse, respondē pūgnam neque fuisse neque futūram esse.

II. 1. I saw that the Gauls were returning; had returned; would return. 2. If you did not bear the toils of war, I should not say that you were brave. 3. If he had not been willing to go, he would not have gone. 4. Even if they thought that their allies were brave, they would wish to defend themselves with a fortification. 5. When he had seen that the magistrates were present, he said that he would reply immediately. 6. The messenger replied that the enemy had run to the gates and (*atque*) had seized even the tower. 7. They say that they cannot endure the rule of the Romans. 8. They announced that the foot-soldiers would seize the gates. 9. When they saw that the hill had been seized by the enemy, they understood that they were conquered. 10. If you think that the place is suitable for a camp, let us go thither.

357. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

1. DIRECT. **SI** quid vīs, cūr nōn venis ad mē? *If you want anything, why do you not come to me?*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus respondet, sī quid vellis, cūr nōn veniās ad eē,** *your friend replies, if you want anything, why don't you come to him.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar respondit, sī quid Ariovistus vellet, cūr nōn venīret ad eē,** *Caesar replied, if Ariovistus wanted anything, why did he not come to him.*

2. DIRECT. **Veni sī vīs,** *come, if you wish.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Amīcus tuus dīcit, veniās sī vellis,** *your friend says (that) you may come if you wish.*

(secondary tense). **Caesar dīxit Ariovistus venīret sī vellet,** *Caesar said (that) Ariovistus might come if he wished.*

3. DIRECT. **SI** aderat Titus, puer bene fēcit, *If Titus was present, the boy did well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō sī adfuerit Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I say that if Titus was present, the boy did well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxī sī adfuisset Titus bene puerum fēcisse,** *I said that if Titus was present, the boy did well (at some time before I said it).*

4. DIRECT. **Cum** Titus adest, puer bene facit, *when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

INDIRECT (primary tense). **Dīcō cum Titus adsit bene puerum facere,** *I say that when Titus is present, the boy does well.*

(secondary tense). **Dīxī cum Titus adesset bene puerum facere,** *I said that when Titus was present, the boy did well.*

Notice the moods. Notice also how the tenses differ in the different sentences. Observe that the first and second persons of the Direct Discourse are usually changed (in Latin as in English) to the third person in the Indirect Discourse.

358. RULE. — *In Indirect Discourse, questions, commands, and subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive.*

359. RULE. — *If the verb of saying, etc., introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a primary tense, the subjunctives are present or perfect; if it is in a secondary tense, the subjunctives are imperfect or pluperfect.*

NOTE. — As the subjunctive lacks the future and future perfect tenses, the future indicative of the Direct Discourse is represented by the present or imperfect subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, and the future perfect indicative by the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive. So *si aderō, bene erit*, if I am (i.e. shall be) present, it will be well, becomes, if quoted indirectly, *dicit si adsit bene futurum esse*, he says that if he is present, it will be well, or (using a secondary tense) *dixit si adesset bene futurum esse*.

360. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Dux existimāvit milites, si vellent, vincere posse. 2. Vobis dicō, si laudari velitis, fortes sitis. 3. Magistratus dixerunt Caesarem si Britannos videret in Galliam reversurum esse. 4. Magistratui nuntiatum est omnes hostium legiones in Italiam revertisse. 5. Dux militibus dixit, si hostibus resistere vellent, munitiones conficerent. 6. Nuntiatum est portam, cum Labienus ad munitiones pervenisset, iam occupatam esse a Gallis. 7. Legatus intellexit pedites in castra se recepturos esse nisi quis auxilio eis veniret. 8. Centurionibus dixit, cum munitiones iam confectae essent, castris milites continerent. 9. Imperator, cum hiemem iam adesse cognovisset, in hiberna legiones duxit. 10. Nuntiatum est hostes, cum

vincere nōn potuissent, primā vigiliā salūtem fugā petītūrōs esse.

II. 1. Fight bravely if you wish to be praised. 2. The general said that the soldiers must fight bravely if they wished to be praised. 3. When the messenger had arrived at the town he went to the magistrates. 4. He told the magistrates that when the camp was taken the Gauls had sought safety in flight. 5. The magistrates replied, that since the Gauls had been conquered, they would receive the Romans in (into) the city. 6. When the messenger had returned to the army, he reported that the magistrates would not return. 7. When he heard this, the general said that he should move the camp at daybreak, since he had done all (the things) on account of which he had come. 8. He thought that, since the leaders of the enemy had been slain, his soldiers would be safe in the city. 9. When the army had been led into the city, the general called the magistrates to him. 10. He said that since they had received him and his soldiers in the city, he counted (held, *habēre*) them in the number of his friends.

361.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 50, 51.]

Proximō diē Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra Caesaris minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Diū atque ācrit̄er pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus in castra redūxit (*led back*). Cum ex captivis Caesar quaereret quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō contendere nōn vellet, hanc reperiēbat causam: apud Germānōs eam cōsuētūdinem (*custom*) esse, ut matrēsfamiliae (*matrons*) eōrum sortibus (*by lots*) et vāticinātiōnibus (*by*

prophecies) dēclārārent (*dēclārō, declare*) utrum (*whether*) proelium committere dēbērent necne (*or not*); eās ita dīcere: Germānōs superātūrōs nōn esse, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent. Posterō diē Caesar praesidium castrīs reliquit (*left*); ipse triplici acie instrūctā (see note on last reading lesson) ad castra hostium accēssit (*went close up*). Germānī coāctī sunt cōpiās suās castrīs ēdūcere. Omnem aciem carrīs circumdederunt, nē qua spēs (*hope*) fugae relinquerētur. In carrīs mulierēs stābant quae eōs hortābantur ut fortiter pugnārent.



CHAPTER LXII.

Participles. (*Review.*)*Ablative Absolute.*

362. Review the participles and their declensions (p. 128).

363. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

- | | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. duce vocante
militēs con-
veniunt, | { | the leader calling,
when the leader calls,
at the call of the leader, | } | the soldiers assem-
ble. |
| 2. Caesar bellō
cōfectō in
castra rediit, | { | the war having been fin-
ished,
when (or after) the war
was finished,
since the war was fin-
ished,
having finished the war, | } | Caesar returned to
camp. |

3. **equitibus fugientibus pedites interfecti sunt,** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the horsemen fleeing,} \\ \text{when the horsemen fled,} \\ \text{since the horsemen fled,} \\ \text{on account of the flight} \\ \text{of the horsemen,} \end{array} \right\}$ *the foot-soldiers were slain.*
4. **hōc factō conveniēmus,** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{this having been done,} \\ \text{when this has been done,} \\ \text{after doing this,} \end{array} \right\}$ *we shall assemble.*
5. **eō duce hostēs viciſtis,** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{he being leader,} \\ \text{when he was leader,} \\ \text{under his leadership,} \\ \text{with him as leader,} \end{array} \right\}$ *you conquered the enemy.*
6. **parte aetātis reliquā domō exibunt,** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{part of the summer re-} \\ \text{maining,} \\ \text{since part of the sum-} \\ \text{mer remains,} \\ \text{if part of the summer} \\ \text{remains,} \end{array} \right\}$ *they will go out from home.*

Notice that in 1, 2, 3, and 4 a noun (or pronoun) and a participle in agreement with it are put in the ablative to designate the time or circumstances of the action expressed by the main verb. The place of the participle may be taken by a noun (*duce* in 5) or an adjective (*reliquā* in 6). The ablative used in this way is called the *ablative absolute*.

364. RULE. — *The ablative absolute is used to designate the time or circumstances of an action.*

365. In the use of the ablative absolute the following things are to be observed:—

1. The noun in the ablative is never the same as the subject or object of the main verb. If we wish to say in Latin, *the leader*

fled, having been defeated, we must say **dux victus fugit**, for *leader* is the subject of *fled*, therefore *dux* must be the subject of *fugit*, and the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative; then *having been defeated* modifies *leader*, therefore *victus* must modify *dux*, and must therefore be in the same case as *dux*, that is, in the nominative.

2. The ablative absolute may be translated in various ways; as (a), by the English absolute construction (**bellō cōfectō**, *the war having been finished*); (b) by a temporal clause (**bellō cōfectō**, *when the war was finished*); (c) by a concessive clause (**bellō cōfectō**, *although the war was finished*); (d) by a condition (**bellō cōfectō**, *if the war was finished*); (e) by various expressions suited to the sentence in which the ablative absolute stands (so **bellō cōfectō**, *at the end of the war*, or *on the completion of the war*).

3. The ablative absolute is often used in Latin where an independent co-ordinate verb would be used in English; as, **Caesar, bellō cōfectō, domum rediit**, *Cæsar finished the war and returned home*.

4. In Latin there is no perfect active participle. If therefore we wish to say in Latin, *Cæsar, having finished the war, returned to camp*, we cannot use, as in English, a participle in agreement with *Cæsar*, but instead, **Caesar, bellō cōfectō, in castra rediit**. The same idea may, of course, be expressed by a clause with **cum**; as, **Caesar, cum bellum cōfēcisset in castra rediit**. Deponent verbs have the perfect participle, and therefore offer no difficulty in translation. Thus *Cæsar, having exhorted the soldiers, led them against the enemy* can be translated **Caesar militēs cohortātus contrā hostēs dūxit**.

5. In Latin there is no present passive participle and no future passive participle. When an English sentence contains one of these participles, the idea must be expressed in Latin by a clause with **cum** (or some other conjunction) or the voice must be changed to the active.

366.

VOCABULARY.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis- sum, let go, lose, [ā + mittō].	persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suā- sum, (<i>with dat.</i> ; also <i>ut and subj.</i>), persuade, [per + suā- deō, urge].
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think, suppose, believe.	satis, adv., enough.
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, effect, accomplish, [ec (<i>for ex, changed to ef before following f</i>) + faciō].	spēs, spei, f., hope, expectation. sub, prep. usually with abl., but after verbs of motion with acc., under, close to, at the foot of.

367.

EXERCISES.

[Translate each ablative absolute in as many ways as you can.]

I. 1. *Omni spē āmissā Britannī ad mūnitiōnēs pervenire contendērunt.* 2. *His rēbus cōfectis magistrātus cīvibus persuāsērunt ut domō exirent.* 3. *Caesar Britannis victis satis sē effēcisse arbitrātus est.* 4. *Militēs satis sē effectūrōs¹ existimābant si pūgnā hostēs vince-rent.* 5. *Hostēs turri occupatā etiam ad castrōrum portam ire contendērunt.* 6. *Aedui dixerunt sē Caesaris imperia sustentūrōs esse si Germānōs Rhēnum trānsire prohiberet.* 7. *Galli, cum tēla āmisissent, dēditionem facere voluērunt.* 8. *Hōc Caesarī nūntiātō respondit si vellet Ariovistus in colloquium venīre, venīret.* 9. *Hostibus ācritē sub mūrō pūgnantibus multi interfecti sunt.* 10. *Caesare imperātōre Rōmāni tōtius Galliae imperiō potiti sunt.*

[Translate each sentence in at least two ways.]

II. 1. Since the tower was finished, he thought the camp was sufficiently fortified. 2. Since all hope was lost, they fled into the woods. 3. Leaving all their vil-lages, the Helvetians tried to make a journey through the

¹ In indirect discourse the *esse* of fut. inf. is often omitted.

territory of the Sequanians. 4. He persuaded the citizens to leave the towns and hasten into the provinces. 5. Even though their javelins were lost, nevertheless they fought long and sharply with their swords. 6. We have learned¹ that when Gaul had been conquered by Cæsar, the Britons lived long under the power of the Roman people. 7. Thinking that enough had been accomplished, since the towers and the gates had been finished, he returned with his legions into the camp. 8. When Cæsar wished to return to Rome, after finishing the war, he left the cohorts in winter quarters. 9. I do not think that the general will return to the city if the legions are lost. 10. Even if the Britons should wish to fight after the loss of their leaders, the magistrates would persuade them to remain in their fortifications.



CHAPTER LXIII.

Gerund and Gerundive.

368. Learn the gerund and gerundive of *amō*, *habēō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *eō*.

Notice that the gerund is declined as a neuter singular noun of the second declension, lacking the nominative and vocative cases, and that the gerundive is declined as a regular adjective of the first and second declensions.

The gerund is a *verbal noun*, the gerundive a *verbal adjective*.

¹ Use *cōgnōscō*.

371. RULE. — *The gerund is, as a noun, governed by other words; as a verb, it may take an object in the proper case.*

Notice that the *gerundive* agrees with its noun like any other adjective. The noun itself is in the case required by the noun, adjective, or other word upon which it depends.

It is only when the gerund would take an object in the accusative that the gerundive can be used instead. The two constructions are both admissible in the genitive; in the other cases, the gerundive is usual.

372. RULE. — *Instead of the gerund with a direct object, the gerundive is generally used. The gerundive agrees in gender, number, and case with its noun, which stands in the case in which the gerund would have been.*

373.

VOCABULARY.

apertus , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> , open, [<i>perf. pass. partic. of aper-</i> riō , open].	ibī , <i>adv.</i> , there.
cōnsistō , cōnsistere , cōnstītī , <i>no supine</i> , stand together, stand firm, stop, halt, [cōn + sistō (<i>reduplicated form</i> <i>from stō</i> , stand)].	imperō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, com- mand, order, <i>used with the</i> <i>dat. of the person to whom</i> <i>the command is given followed</i> <i>by ut or nē with the subjunc-</i> <i>tive.</i>
cōnspicīō , -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, spy, see, behold, [con + spic (<i>for spec</i> , a <i>root denoting sight</i>) + iō].	retineō , -ēre, -tīnuī, -tentum, hold back, retain, [re , back; teneō , hold].
	scūtum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , shield.

374.

EXERCISES.

I. 1. Scūtīs āmissīs tamen cōnstītērunt ad portam dēfendendam. 2. Dīxērunt ibi sē mānsūrōs esse ubi ad castra dēfendenda cōnstītissent. 3. Centuriōnibus impetrāvit ut dē turribus cōficiendis cōgitārent. 4. Amicō

nostrō persuādeāmus nē spem oppidi capiendī amittat.
 5. Satis effectum esse arbitror si lēgātī ad pācem petendam missi sunt. 6. Cum nostrōs ad pūgnam convenientēs cōspexissent, tempus pūgnandī vēnisse existimāvērunt. 7. Etiam sub imperiō Populī Rōmānī, Gallī retinērī nōn poterant nē inter sē contenderent. 8. His rēbus factis nostrī ad flūmen trānseundum profectī sunt. 9. Helvētīī dē itinere per Sēquanōrum finēs faciendō ad Caesarem lēgātōs misērunt. 10. His ille respondit sē nullī potestātem itineris per prōvinciam faciendī datūrum esse.

II. 1. This place is not suitable for fortifying¹ a camp. 2. When the gate was opened, he commanded us to go against the enemy. 3. Having seized the mountain, they halted there to wait (for waiting) for the general. 4. When they beheld the legions going out from the camp, they thought that an opportunity of making an attack was offered (given). 5. They placed towers at the gates for defending the town. 6. Although all hope of taking the town was lost, still they did not flee, but remained there all night. 7. When the general commanded them to halt there, they did not obey the command. 8. He said many things about taking cities and conquering enemies. 9. If you should say anything about making peace, you would lose the friendship of the consul. 10. Cæsar crossed into Britain to find out (for finding out) the customs of the Britons.

375.**READING LESSON.**

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, I. 52, 53.]

Caesar ā dextrō cornū, quod (*because*) eam partem minimē firmam (*strong*) hostium animadverterat, proe-

¹ See foot-note, p. 186.

lium commisit. Ita acriter nostri in hostēs signō datō impetum fecerunt itaque celeriter hostēs prōcurrerunt (*ran forward*) ut spatium (*room, space*) pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Gladiis pūgnātum est diū atque acriter. Tandem (*at length*) Germānī victī fūgerunt, neque prius¹ fugere dēstitērunt (perf. of *dēsistō, cease*) quam¹ ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi paucī flūmine trānsitō sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Reliquōs omnēs equitātus noster interfēcit. Duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, quæ in eā fugā periērunt (*perished*). Duārum filiārum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā traherētur (*trahō, -ere, drag*) in ipsum Caesarem incidit, et Mārcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus (*brought back*) est.



CHAPTER LXIV.

Supine.

Expressions of Purpose.

376. Learn the supines of the regular and irregular verbs.

377. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

vēnērunt aquam petītum, they came to seek water.

missus est rem renūntiātum, he was sent to report the matter.

¹ prius . . . quam, sooner . . . than, i.e. until.

378. RULE. — *The supine in -um (accusative supine) is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

NOTE. — The most frequent use of the supine in *-um* is with the verb *eō*, especially with the impersonal infinitive passive; as, *amātum iri*. This is the simplest way of forming the future infinitive passive. (For a more usual way of expressing the idea of the future infinitive passive, see the following chapter.)

379. Other ways of expressing purpose have already been given. *They came to seek water* may be expressed as follows: —

vēnērunt ut aquam peterent (*ut* and the subjunctive, **311**).

vēnērunt quī aquam peterent (relative and the subjunctive, **311**).

vēnērunt ad aquam petendam (gerundive with *ad*, **370**).

vēnērunt aquam petitum (accusative supine as above).

Instead of the gerundive with *ad* the gerund may be used, but only when the verb is intransitive; as, *vēnērunt ad mihi respondendum*, *they came to reply to me*.

380. Purpose may also be expressed by the gerund or gerundive in the genitive followed by *causā* (or *grātiā*), *for the sake of*: —

vēnērunt aquam petendī causā (grātiā).

vēnērunt aquae petendae causā (grātiā).

Causā and *grātiā* are the ablatives of *causa*, *cause*, and *grātia*, *favor*, *influence*. They are used with the genitive as prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative, but when so used they are always placed after the genitive.

381. The future participle is also occasionally used to express purpose; as, *vēnērunt aquam petitūrī*, *they came about to seek water*, i.e. *they came to seek water*.

What are eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin?

382. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.*facile est factū, it is easy to do.**difficile est dictū, it is hard to tell.*

383. RULE. — *The supine in -ū (ablative supine) is used with adjectives (and a few other words) to limit their meaning.*

384. VOCABULARY.

grātia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , influence, favor (<i>abl. grātiā</i> for the sake of, with <i>gen. like causā</i>).	coniciō , -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, hurl together, [<i>con + iaciō</i>].
quantus , -a, -um, <i>adj., rel. and</i> <i>inter.</i> , how great.	pellō , -ere, pepulī , pulsum , repel, repulse, defeat.
animadvertō , -ere, -ī, -sum, notice, perceive, [<i>anim (of</i> <i>animus)</i> + <i>ad + vertō</i> (turn) turn the mind to].	nam , <i>conj.</i> , for. quidem , indeed, at least, <i>espe-</i> <i>cially</i> nē . . . quidem , not even.

385. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Hōc animadversō Caesar imperāvit ut ibi cōsisterent. 2. Incrēdibile dictū est quantā celeritāte ad tēla conicienda convēnerint. 3. Orgetorix apud Helvētiōs plūrimum valēbat grātiā et animī māgnitūdine, nam nihil esse arbitrātī sunt quod efficere nōn posset. 4. Gallī nē scūtīs quidem āmissīs omnem spem āmiserunt. 5. Helvētīi proeliō pulsī lēgātōs ad Caesarem pācem petītum mīserunt. 6. Cum Procillum venientem cōspexisset portā apertā ad eum contendit. 7. Lēgātōs, quī ad pācem petendam vēnerant, apud sē retinuit nē domum reverterentur. 8. Nam verēbātur nē, sī domum revertissent, Gallīs persuādērent ut ad impetum in castra faciendum convenirent. 9. Mihi quidem satis erit si bene

ac celeriter eas res confeceritis ad quas conficiendas vos convocavi. 10. Hoc si optimum factum est faciamus. 11. Haec quidem dicere volebam ut intellegeretis. Sed satis dictum est.

[Translate the purpose clauses in various ways.]

II. 1. Let us go to seek aid. I think this is the best (thing) to do. 2. When he had noticed that the Gauls had hurled their javelins, he ordered his (men) to make a charge. 3. Not even when the enemy were repulsed did he dare to halt there. 4. When the leaders of the enemy perceived this, they encouraged (strengthened the spirits of) their men to fight. 5. We have come to you, not to fight, but to make peace. 6. Caesar had great influence among the Gauls, for they understood how great his power was. 7. Those who had been sent to learn the nature of the place, reported that it was suitable for making a camp. 8. Scouts came for the purpose of seeing the army and reporting to their chiefs. 9. Having noticed this, Caesar retained them in the camp. 10. Envoys were sent to the general to seek peace, in order to put (make) an end to (of) the war. 11. The general replied to them that he had come to conquer the Gauls. 12. Having heard this, the chiefs of the Gauls called their (men) together and encouraged them to fight.

CHAPTER LXV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

Dative of Agent.

386. Examine the following : —

PRES.	amātūrus sum , <i>I am about to love (or, I am going to love).</i>
IMPERF.	amātūrus eram , <i>I was about to love.</i>
FUT.	amātūrus erō , <i>I shall be about to love.</i>
PERF.	amātūrus fui , <i>I have been (was) about to love.</i>
PLUPERF.	amātūrus fueram , <i>I had been about to love.</i>
FUT. PERF.	amātūrus fuerō , <i>I shall have been about to love.</i>

The future active participle is combined in this way with all the moods and tenses of **sum**. The combination is called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation*. The tenses are called *present*, *imperfect*, etc., according to the tense of **sum** employed.

The future active participle of any verb, with the present indicative of **sum**, has substantially the same meaning as the future active indicative. The two expressions, **amābō** and **amātūrus sum**, are equivalents. But for the other forms given above, there are no simple equivalents.

387. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

nōn dubitō quī amātūrus sit, *I do not doubt that he will (is about to) love.*

quaesivī quid factūrus esset, *I asked what he was going to do.*

Notice that the First Periphrastic Conjugation supplies a future tense for the subjunctive mood.

The regular future active infinitive (as *amātūrus esse*) is evidently a part of the First Periphrastic Conjugation, being formed of the future active participle and the infinitive of *sum*.

The future passive infinitive is also frequently formed with the aid of *sum*. For this purpose, the future infinitive of *sum* is used; but the form employed is almost invariably *fore*, not *futūrum esse*. When thus used, *fore* is followed by *ut* and the subjunctive; as, —

crēdō fore ut amētur, *I believe that he will be loved (that it will be or will come to pass that he is loved).*

putābam fore ut liber scriberētur, *I thought that the book would be written (that it would be or would come to pass that the book was written).*

The future infinitive passive in Indirect Discourse is usually formed in this way.

388. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

PRES. *amandus sum*, *I am to be loved, I ought to (must) be loved, it is necessary that I be loved.*

IMPERF. *amandus eram*, *I was to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

FUT. *amandus erō*, *I ought (hereafter) to be loved, it will be necessary that I be loved.*

PERF. *amandus fui*, *I have been (was) to be loved, I ought to have been loved, it was necessary that I be loved.*

The other moods (except the imperative) and tenses of *sum* are also used in combination with the gerundive, forming the *Second Periphrastic Conjugation*.

Observe that the Second Periphrastic Conjugation is *passive*, and involves the idea of *necessity* or *obligation*.

389. ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

hōc mihi faciendum est, *this must be done by me, or I must do this.*

intellēxit pontem sibi faciendum esse, *he understood that a bridge must be built by him, or that he must build a bridge.*

Observe that the person by whom the action is to be performed is put in the dative. This is called the *dative of agent*.

390. RULE. — *With the gerundive expressing obligation, the dative is used to denote the person upon whom the obligation rests.*

391. VOCABULARY.

autem, *conj.*, but, however, (*the second word in its clause*).

coepī, *coepisse*, began (*only the tenses formed from the perfect stem exist*), followed by the infinitive.

cōnsuēscō, *-suēscere*, *-suēvī*, *-suētum*, be accustomed, [*con + suēscō*].

dēmōnstrō, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, show, explain, demonstrate, [*dē + mōnstrō*, show].

ēgredior, *-gredī*, *-gressus sum*, go out, come out, [*ē + gredior (for gradior, step, go)*].

fortūna, *-ae*, *f.*, fortune.

prōgredior, *-gredī*, *-gressus sum*, go forward, advance, [*prō + gradior*].

trādō, *-dere*, *-didī*, *-dītum*, give over, hand over, give up, [*trā (for trāns, across or over) + a shortened form of da, the root of dō, give*].

392. EXERCISES.

I. 1. Ibi nōbīs cōsistendum est ubi imperātor ut cōsistāmus imperat. 2. Imperāvit autem ut sub mūrō cōsisterēmus, nam animadverterat hostēs prōgressūrōs esse. 3. Portā ad ēgrediendum apertā, tamen mīlitēs in castrīs retinuit. 4. Scūta et pīla nostra trādenda sunt, animōs autem semper retinēbimus. 5. Ibi multis lapidibus in ūnum locum coniectīs mūrū facere coepērunt.

6. Omnia dēmōnstrāvi quae mihi dēmōnstranda erant. 7. Quaesīvit num milītēs quōs in silvā cōspexisset ēgressūri essent. 8. Helvētīi quidem pulsī sunt, Germānī autem vincendī sunt. 9. Discipulīs multa faciēda sunt ad grātiā apud magistrum petendam. 10. Dixit fore ut castra trāderentur, cum milītēs pulsī essent. 11. Intelligendum est quanta fortūnae sit potestās. 12. Quaerō quid factūri sitis ut apud cīvēs grātiā valeātis. 13. Cōnsuēscunt hominēs multa facere quae faciēda nōn sunt. 14. Ducī militum animī ad pūgnandum cōfirmandī sunt.

II. 1. The Britons were accustomed to choose leaders when they were about to go out from their territories. 2. Influence and power ought to be sought, but friendship is better. 3. I do not doubt that the enemy will advance with great spirit. 4. Since the enemy have begun to build (*make*) a wall, we must go out against them. 5. You say that you have come to seek peace, but peace must not be made unless you give up (your) arms. 6. Cæsar shows in the first book with what great (how) great) peoples he had to fight (it was to be fought by him). 7. When the general perceived the shields of the enemy in the wood, he understood that he must go out to fight. 8. Not even his enemies doubt that Cæsar will conquer the Gauls. 9. We must throw all our shields together in (to) one place, but must retain our swords in our hands. 10. You must not go out; for your father ordered you to remain at home.

393.

READING LESSON.

[CÆSAR, *Gallie War*, Book I. 54.]

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī (*Suebi*, a German tribe) quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum re-

verti coepērunt, quōs Ubiī (another tribe), qui proximī Rhēnum¹ incolunt, territōs secūtī, māgnū ex hīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, finē aestāte duōbus māximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō (*a little*) quam tempus anni pōstulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit (*led away*); hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem (*nearer*²) Galliam ad conventūs (*circuit courts*³) agendōs profectus est.

¹ Rhēnum : the accusative is often used after *proximus*.

² *Nearer*, or *Hither Gaul* was Gaul nearer Rome; i.e. the northern part of what is now Italy.

³ Cæsar was governor of Gaul, and holding courts was one of his duties.



SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT-READING.

[Words not in the vocabularies are given in the foot-notes.]

394.

Respect to Age.

Lysander¹ Lacedaemonius² hōc dixisse dicitur: "Lacedaemone³ optimē vivere possunt senēs. Nusquam⁴ enim⁵ tantam habent auctoritatem." Athēnīs olim⁶ lūdis⁷ institūtis⁸ quīdam in theātrum⁹ senex vēnit, nec ei locus datus est ā suis cīvibus; tum¹⁰ ad lēgātōs Lacedaemoniōs accēssit¹¹; hī autem omnēs cōsurrēxēre¹² et senī locum dedērunt. Hōc factum¹³ probantibus¹⁴ Athēniēnsibus,¹⁵ ūnus ē lēgātis¹⁶ dixit, "Athēniēnsēs sciunt quidem rēcta¹⁷ facere, sed facere nōlunt.

¹ *Lysander*, a man's name. ² *Lacedæmonian*. ³ *At Lacedæmon*.
⁴ *Nowhere*. ⁵ *For* (conj., postpositive). ⁶ *Once upon a time*.
⁷ *Games*. ⁸ Perf. part. of *instituo*, *arrange, put in order*. Here
lūdis institūtis, *when a play was to be given*. ⁹ *Theatre*. ¹⁰ *Then*.
¹¹ *Approached*. ¹² *Rose up at once*. ¹³ *Act*. ¹⁴ *Approving* (pres.
part. of *probo*, 1). ¹⁵ *The Athenians*. ¹⁶ Instead of the partitive
genitive, the abl. with *ē* or *ex* may be used. ¹⁷ *Right* (n. pl.).

395.

A Retort.

Vēnit olim¹ quīdam ad Aristippum philosophum² et-
que dixit: "Visne filium meum artēs tuās docēre³?"
Respondit Aristippus: "Hōc equidem⁴ faciam acceptis⁵
duobus talentis.⁶" Pater autem prētiō⁷ territus, dixit:

"At servum minōris⁸ emere⁹ possum," Contrā¹⁰ Aris-
tippus, "Fac¹¹ hōc: ita duōs servōs habēbis."

¹ Once. ² Philosopher. ³ Teach. ⁴ Certainly. ⁵ Perf. part. of accipio, receive. ⁶ Talents, a sum of money. ⁷ Price. ⁸ For less (genitive, denoting an indefinite price). ⁹ Buy. ¹⁰ In reply. ¹¹ Imperative of facio.

396.

An Honorable People.

Themistoclēs¹ olim² pūgnā nāvālī³ victis Persis⁴ Athē-
nis apud concionem⁵ dixit: "Cōnsilium in animō habeō:
hōc utile⁶ reipublicae erit, cēlārī tamen oportet.⁷ Ūnī ē
primōribus⁸ rem dicere volō." Aristidēs⁹ ad hōc mūnus¹⁰
dēlēctus est. Huic dixit Themistoclēs: "Lacedaemoniō-
rum classis¹¹ in ancoris¹² in portū est. Hanc clam¹³
incendere¹⁴ poterimus. Ita illōrum potestās nāvālis⁵
dēlēbitur.¹⁵" His auditis Aristidēs reversus apud con-
cionem⁵ dixit: "Themistoclis cōnsilium utile quidem,
sed minimē¹⁶ honestum¹⁷ est." Itaque Athēniēnsēs nē
audītum quidem cōnsilium sprēverunt.¹⁸

¹ An Athenian statesman. ² Once. ³ Naval. ⁴ Persians.
⁵ Assembly. ⁶ Useful. ⁷ Must, is necessary. ⁸ The chief men.
Instead of a partitive genitive, the abl. with ē is used. ⁹ A prominent
Athenian. ¹⁰ Duty. ¹¹ Fleet. ¹² Anchors. Here in ancoris,
at anchor. ¹³ Secretly. ¹⁴ Set on fire. ¹⁵ Dēlēō, 2, destroy.
¹⁶ Not at all. ¹⁷ Honorable. ¹⁸ Rejected.

397.

The Ass and the Wolf.

Ad asinum¹ gravī morbō² aegrum³ socii vērērunt, ut
quid ageret⁴ vidērent. Inter aliōs lūpus⁵ quoque⁶ vēnit.
Quī cum corpus eius tangeret,⁷ et interrogāvisset,⁸ quae
corporis partēs māximē dolērent, asinus respondit: "Eae
partēs corporis māximē dolent, quās tū tangis."

¹ Ass. ² Disease. ³ Sick. ⁴ What he was doing, i.e. how he did.
⁵ Wolf. ⁶ Also. ⁷ Touched (tangō, -ere, tetigi, tactum). ⁸ Had
asked.

398.

The Lion's Share.

Cum leō¹ vñātum² iret, socii eius erant canis³ et lupus.⁴ Leō cum partēs praedae⁵ aequalēs⁶ factae essent, ita locūtus est⁷: "Prīmam partem capiō, quia⁸ rēx vester sum; secundam, quia⁸ fortis sum mihi dabit; tertiam qui⁹ tetigerit¹⁰ mē inimicum sibi habēbit. Ita leō tōtam praedam⁵ sōlus abstulit.¹¹ Haec fābula docet, quam¹² periculōsum¹³ sit societātēs¹⁴ cum potentiōribus inire.¹⁵

- ¹ *Lion.* ² *To hunt* (supine of vñor, 1, dep.). ³ *Dog.* ⁴ *Wolf.*
⁵ *Booty.* ⁶ *Equal.* ⁷ *Spoke* (loquor, loqui, locūtus sum).
⁸ *Because.* ⁹ *Whoever.* ¹⁰ From tangō, touch. ¹¹ *Took away*
[auferō, auferre, abstulit, ablātum, (ab + ferō)]. ¹² *How.*
¹³ *Dangerous.* ¹⁴ *Alliances.* ¹⁵ *Enter into* (in + eō).

399.

Julius Caesar.

[Adapted from Eutropius, Book VI. 17-25.]

1. Annō urbis conditae¹ sēscentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō tertiō Gāius Iulius Caesar, qui postea² imperāvit³ cum Lūciō Bibulō⁴ cōsul est factus. Is primō⁵ vicit Helvētiōs, qui nunc Sēquani appellantur, deinde⁶ vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad⁷ Oceanum Britannicum⁸ prōcēssit.⁹ Domuit¹⁰ autem annis novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Oceanum est. Britannis mox¹¹ bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cōgnitum erat, et eōs quoque¹² victōs obsidibus acceptis¹³ stipendiāriōs¹⁴ fēcit. Galliae autem tributum¹⁵ imperāvit, Germānōsque multis proeliis vicit.

- ¹ *In the year of the founded city, i.e. since the foundation of the city.* Rome was founded B.C. 753. ² *Afterwards.* ³ *Was emperor.*
⁴ *The Romans elected two consuls annually.* ⁵ *First, i.e. at first.*
⁶ *Next.* ⁷ *Usque ad, even to, as far as.* ⁸ *The British Ocean,*
now called the North Sea. ⁹ *Advanced.* ¹⁰ *Subdued.* ¹¹ *Presently.*
¹² *Also.* ¹³ *Perf. part. of accipio, receive.* ¹⁴ *Tributaries.* ¹⁵ *Tribute.*

2. Hinc¹ iam bellum cīvile² succēssit³ quō populi Rōmānī fortūna mūtata⁴ est. Caesar enim⁵ rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit pōscere⁶ alterum⁷ cōsulātum.⁸ Contrādictum est⁹ ā Marcellō cōsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iūssusque¹⁰ dīmīssīs exercitibus ad urbem redīre. Propter quam¹¹ iniūriam ab Ariminō,¹² ubi milites suos habēbat, adversum¹³ patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa¹⁴ nobilitās¹⁵ ex urbe fugit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi Pompēiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

¹ Hence. ² Civil. ³ Succeeded, followed. ⁴ Changed. ⁵ For (conj., postpositive). ⁶ To demand. ⁷ A second. ⁸ Consulship. ⁹ It was spoken against, i.e. opposition was made. ¹⁰ Supply Caesar and est. ¹¹ The relative is often used in Latin where we use a demonstrative. ¹² From about Ariminum, a place in Northern Italy. ¹³ Against. ¹⁴ Entire. ¹⁵ Nobility.

3. Caesar vacuum¹ urbem ingressus² dictātōrem³ sē fecit. Inde⁴ Hispāniās⁵ petiit. Ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs⁶ et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde⁴ regressus⁷ in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum⁸ Pompēium dīmīcāvit.⁹ Primō proeliō victus est et fugātus,¹⁰ evāsit¹¹ tamen quia¹² nocte interveniente¹³ Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar, nec Pompēium scīre vincere, et illō tantum¹⁴ diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde¹⁵ in Thessaliā apud Pharsālum¹⁶ ingentibus cōpiīs dīmīcāvērunt.⁹

¹ Empty, i.e. with the senate and nobility gone. ² Having entered (perf. part. of *ingredior*). ³ Dictator. ⁴ Thence. ⁵ Spain was divided into two provinces by the Romans, hence the plural. ⁶ Superl. of *validus*, strong. ⁷ Having returned (perf. part. of *regredior*). ⁸ Against. ⁹ Fought. ¹⁰ Put to flight (from *fugō*, 1). ¹¹ Escaped (from *evādō*). ¹² Because. ¹³ From *intervenīō*, come between, intervene. ¹⁴ Only. ¹⁵ Next. ¹⁶ Near Pharsalus in Thessaly.

4. Nunquam¹ Rōmānae cōpiaē neque māiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant. Pugnātum est diū et ācriter, victusque ad postrēmum² Pompēius³ et castra ēius direpta⁴ sunt. Ipse fugātus⁵ Alexandriam⁶ petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cui tūtōr⁷ ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenilem⁸ ēius aetātem,⁹ acciperet¹⁰ auxilia. Quī fortūnam magis quam amīcitiā secūtus¹¹ occidit Pompēium, caput ēius et anulum¹² Caesarī mīsit. Quō cōnspectō Caesar lacrimās¹³ fūdisse¹⁴ dicitur.

¹ *Never.* After this, *neque . . . neque* must be rendered by *either . . . or.* ² *At last.* ³ *Supply est.* ⁴ *Plundered* (from *dīrīpiō*). ⁵ *Put to flight* (from *fugō*, 1). ⁶ *Alexandria*, a large seaport in Egypt. ⁷ *Guardian.* ⁸ *Youthful, juvenile.* ⁹ *Age.* ¹⁰ *From accipiō* (*ad + capiō*), *receive.* ¹¹ *Following*, i.e. *paying respect to.* ¹² *Ring.* A seal ring, to prove his identity. ¹³ *Tears.* ¹⁴ *Perf. inf. of fundō*, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour*, here *shed*.

5. Mox¹ Caesar Alexandriā vēnit. Ipsī² quoque³ Ptolemaeus⁴ parāre voluit insidiās,⁵ quā causā rēgi bellum illātum est. Eō victō Caesar Alexandriā potītus rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōri. Inde⁷ rediēns Caesar Pharnacem⁶ quī multās populī Rōmāni prōvinciās occupābat, proeliō vīcit, et ad mortem cōegit. Inde⁷ Rōmam regressus⁸ tertiō⁹ sē cōnsulem fēcit. Inde⁷ in Africam profectus est, ubi multī nōbilēs, quōrum ducēs prīncipēs erant rei pūblicae, bellum reparāverant.¹⁰ Contrā hōs commissō proeliō victor fuit Caesar. Ducēs eōrum aut ipsī sē occidērunt aut ā Caesare interfecti sunt.

¹ *Presently.* ² *Supply Caesarī, against Caesar himself.* ³ *Also.* ⁴ *The king of Egypt mentioned above.* ⁵ *Treachery*, i.e. he wished to murder him. ⁶ *A king of Pontus.* ⁷ *Thence.* ⁸ *Having returned* (from *regredior*). ⁹ *For the third time.* ¹⁰ *Had renewed* [from *reparō* (*re + parō*)].

6. Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus¹ quārtō² sē cōsulem fēcit et statim³ ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pompēi filiōs, Gnaeum et Sextum, quī ingēns bellum reparāverant,⁴ apud Mundam civitātem māgnō proeliō superāvit. Ex Pompēi filiis māior occisus est, minor fugit. Inde⁵ Caesar bellis civilibus⁶ tōtō orbe⁷ compositis⁸ Rōmam rediit. Agere insolentius⁹ coepit et contrā cōsuetūdinem¹⁰ Rōmānae libertātis.¹¹ Haec cum diūtius ferre nōn possent coniūrātiōnem¹² in eum fēcērunt multī senātōrēs¹³ equitēsque¹⁴ Rōmānī. Principēs fuērunt inter coniūrātōs¹⁵ duo Brūtī, ex eō genere¹⁶ Brūtī, quī prīmus Rōmae cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat,¹⁷ Gāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ergō¹⁸ Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter cēterōs¹⁹ vēnisset ad cūriam,²⁰ vīgintī tribus vulneribus cōnfossus est.²¹

¹ Having returned. ² For the fourth time. ³ Immediately.

⁴ Had renewed. ⁵ Thence, then. ⁶ Civil. ⁷ World (orb of the earth).

⁸ Put to rest, finished (con + pōnō). ⁹ More arrogantly.

¹⁰ Custom, i.e. contrary to the free institutions of the Romans. ¹¹ Liberty.

¹² Conspiracy. ¹³ Senators. ¹⁴ Knights. ¹⁵ Conspirators.

¹⁶ Family. ¹⁷ Had driven out. ¹⁸ Therefore, so. ¹⁹ The rest.

²⁰ The senate house. ²¹ Was pierced, stabbed to death.

NOUNS.

400. First or *a*-Declension.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i> mēnsa, <i>a table.</i>	mēnsae, <i>tables.</i>
<i>G.</i> mēnsae, <i>of a table.</i>	mēnsārum, <i>of tables.</i>
<i>D.</i> mēnsae, <i>to or for a table.</i>	mēnsīs, <i>to or for tables.</i>
<i>Ac.</i> mēnsam, <i>table.</i>	mēnsās, <i>tables.</i>
<i>V.</i> mēnsa, <i>thou table.</i>	mēnsae, <i>ye tables.</i>
<i>Ab.</i> mēnsā, <i>from, by, with,</i> <i>etc., a table.</i>	mēnsīs, <i>from, by, with, etc.,</i> <i>tables.</i>

401. Second or *o*-Declension.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N.</i> servus	servī	bellum	bella
<i>G.</i> servi	servōrum	belli	bellōrum
<i>D.</i> servō	servīs	bellō	bellīs
<i>Ac.</i> servum	servōs	bellum	bella
<i>V.</i> serve	servī	bellum	bella
<i>Ab.</i> servō	servīs	bellō	bellīs

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
<i>N.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>G.</i> puerī	agri	virī
<i>D.</i> puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Ac.</i> puerum	agrum	virum
<i>V.</i> puer	ager	vir
<i>Ab.</i> puerō	agrō	virō

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>pueriā</i>	<i>agriis</i>	<i>viris</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>pueriis</i>	<i>agriis</i>	<i>viris</i>

402.

Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>prīncipi</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>mīlitā</i>	<i>capitī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>caput</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>capite</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>capita</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>capitum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

SINGULAR.

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>voluptās</i>	<i>pēs</i>	<i>cūstōs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>voluptātis</i>	<i>pedis</i>	<i>cūstōdis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>voluptātī</i>	<i>pedi</i>	<i>cūstōdī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>voluptātem</i>	<i>pedem</i>	<i>cūstōdem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>voluptāte</i>	<i>pede</i>	<i>cūstōde</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>voluptātēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>	<i>cūstōdēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>voluptātum</i>	<i>pedum</i>	<i>cūstōdum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>voluptātibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>	<i>cūstōdibus</i>

Liquid Stems.**SINGULAR.**

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>cōsul</i>	<i>victor</i>	<i>virgō</i>	<i>vulnus</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōsulis</i>	<i>victōris</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>vulneris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>cōsulī</i>	<i>victōrī</i>	<i>virginī</i>	<i>vulnerī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>cōsulem</i>	<i>victōrem</i>	<i>virginem</i>	<i>vulnus</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>cōsule</i>	<i>victōre</i>	<i>virgine</i>	<i>vulnere</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>cōsulēs</i>	<i>victōrēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>vulnera</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>cōsulum</i>	<i>victōrum</i>	<i>virginum</i>	<i>vulnerum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>cōsulibus</i>	<i>victōribus</i>	<i>virginibus</i>	<i>vulneribus</i>

Stems in i.**SINGULAR.**

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ignī</i>	<i>hostī</i>	<i>caedi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ignem</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>caedem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ignī, -e</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>caede</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N., V.</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>caedium</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ignēs, -is</i>	<i>hostēs, -is</i>	<i>caedēs, -is</i>

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., Ac., V.</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>maria</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animālia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>marium</i>	<i>animālīs</i>	<i>animālīum</i>
<i>D., Ab.</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>maribus</i>	<i>animālī</i>	<i>animālībus</i>

Mixed Stems.**SINGULAR.**

<i>N., V.</i>	nox	urbs	mōns
<i>G.</i>	noctis	urbis	montis
<i>D.</i>	noctī	urbī	monti
<i>Ac.</i>	noctem	urbem	montem
<i>Ab.</i>	nocte	urbe	monte

PLURAL.

<i>N., V.</i>	noctēs	urbēs	montēs
<i>G.</i>	noctium	urbium	montium
<i>D., Ab.</i>	noctibus	urbibus	montibus
<i>Ac.</i>	noctēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	montēs, -īs

403. Fourth or *u*-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua.
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercitui (ū)	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

404. Fifth or *e*-Declension.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>G.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>D.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Ac.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Ab.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES.

405. First and Second Declension.

SINGULAR.		
<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
<i>G.</i> boni	bonae	boni
<i>D.</i> bono	bonae	bono
<i>Ac.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>V.</i> bone	bona	bonum
<i>Ab.</i> bono	bona	bono
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i> bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
<i>D.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Ac.</i> bonos	bonas	bona
<i>V.</i> boni	bonae	bona
<i>Ab.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> miser	miser	miserum
<i>G.</i> miseri	miser	miseri
<i>D.</i> misero	miser	miser
<i>Ac.</i> miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>V.</i> miser	miser	miserum
<i>Ab.</i> misero	miser	miser
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> miseri	miser	miser
<i>G.</i> miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
<i>D.</i> miseris	miseris	miseris
<i>Ac.</i> miseros	miseras	miser
<i>V.</i> miseri	miser	miser
<i>Ab.</i> miseris	miseris	miseris

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>

406. Adjectives of Third Declension.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>celer</i>	<i>celeris</i>	<i>celere</i>
<i>G.</i>		<i>ācris</i>			<i>celeris</i>	
<i>D., Ab.</i>		<i>ācrī</i>			<i>celerī</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>celerem</i>	<i>celerem</i>	<i>celere</i>

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>	<i>celerēs</i>	<i>celerēs</i>	<i>celerīa</i>
<i>G.</i>		<i>ācrium</i>			<i>celerium</i>	
<i>D., Ab.</i>		<i>ācribus</i>			<i>celeribus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ācrēs (-is)</i>	<i>ācrēs (-is)</i>	<i>ācria</i>	<i>celerēs (-is)</i>	<i>celerēs (-is)</i>	<i>celerīa</i>

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N., V.</i>	<i>brevīs</i>		<i>breve</i>	<i>brevēs</i>		<i>brevīa</i>
<i>G.</i>		<i>brevīs</i>			<i>brevium</i>	
<i>D., Ab.</i>		<i>brevī</i>			<i>brevibus</i>	
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>brevem</i>		<i>breve</i>	<i>brevēs (-is)</i>		<i>brevīa</i>

PLURAL.

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>	
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōx		potēns		
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcis		potētis		
<i>D.</i>	vēlōcī		potētī		
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcem	vēlōx	potentem	potēns	
<i>Ab.</i>	vēlōcī (-e)		potētī (-e)		
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
<i>N., V.</i>	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia	potentēs	potentia	
<i>G.</i>	vēlōcium		potentium		
<i>D., Ab.</i>	vēlōcibus		potentibus		
<i>Ac.</i>	vēlōcēs (-is)	vēlōcia	potentēs (-is)	potentia	

407. Declension of Comparatives.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>	
<i>N., V.</i>	cāriōr	cārius	cāriōrēs	cāriōra	
<i>G.</i>	cāriōris		cāriōrum		
<i>D.</i>	cāriōrī		cāriōribus		
<i>Ac.</i>	cāriōrem	cārius	cāriōrēs (-is)	cāriōra	
<i>Ab.</i>	cāriōre	or -i	cāriōribus		

408. Irregular Adjectives.

SINGULAR.					
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine. Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna unum
<i>G.</i>	alius	alius	alius	ūnūs	ūnūs
<i>D.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Ac.</i>	aliūm	aliām	aliud	ūnum	ūnam unum
<i>Ab.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā unō

The plural is regular.

duo, two.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	duo	duæ	duo
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Ac.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Ab.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, three.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>G.</i>	trium	trium	trium
<i>D.</i>	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>Ac.</i>	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>Ab.</i>	tribus	tribus	tribus

409.**Irregular Comparison.**

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, <i>easy.</i>	facillor.	facillimus.
difficilis, <i>difficult.</i>	difficillor.	difficillimus.
similis, <i>like.</i>	simillor.	simillimus.
dissimilis, <i>unlike.</i>	dissimillor.	dissimillimus.
gracilis, <i>slender.</i>	gracillor.	gracillimus.
humilis, <i>low.</i>	humillor.	humillimus.
exterus, <i>outward.</i>	exterior, <i>outer or more outward.</i>	extrēmus and extimus, <i>outermost or last.</i>
inferus, <i>low.</i>	inferior, <i>lower.</i>	īnīmus and īmus, <i>lowest.</i>
posterus, <i>following.</i>	posterior, <i>later.</i>	postrēmus and postumus, <i>last.</i>
superus, <i>upper.</i>	superior, <i>higher.</i>	suprēmus and summus, <i>top of, highest.</i>
bonus, <i>good.</i>	melior, melius, <i>better.</i>	optimus, <i>best.</i>
malus, <i>bad.</i>	pēior, pēius, <i>worse.</i>	pessimus, <i>worst.</i>
māgnus, <i>great.</i>	māior, māius, <i>greater.</i>	māximus, <i>greatest.</i>
multus, <i>much.</i>	—, plūs, ¹ <i>more.</i>	plūrimus, <i>most.</i>
multī, <i>many.</i>	plūrēs, plūra, <i>more.</i>	plūrimī, <i>most.</i>
parvus, <i>small.</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller.</i>	minimus, <i>smallest.</i>
senex, <i>old.</i>	senior (māior nātū), <i>older, elder.</i>	māximus nātū, <i>oldest, eldest.</i>
iuvenis, <i>young.</i>	īūnior (minor nātū), <i>younger.</i>	minimus nātū, <i>youngest.</i>
prae, prō (prep., <i>before</i>).	prior, <i>former.</i>	prīmus, <i>first.</i>
prope (adv., <i>near</i>).	propior, <i>nearer.</i>	proximus, <i>nearest.</i>

¹ The neuter plūs, nom. and acc., and the gen. plūris, are the only forms used in the singular.

410. CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum	30. trīgintā
2. duo, duae, duo	40. quadrāgintā
3. trēs, tria	50. quīnquāgintā
4. quattuor	60. sexāgintā
5. quīnque	70. septuāgintā
6. sex	80. octōgintā
7. septem	90. nōnāgintā
8. octō	100. centum
9. novem	101. centum ūnus <i>or</i> centum et ūnus
10. decem	102. centum duo <i>or</i> centum et duo
11. ūndecim	200. ducentī, -ae, -a
12. duodecim	300. trecentī, -ae, -a
13. tredecim	400. quadringentī, -ae, -a
14. quattuordecim	500. quīngentī, -ae, -a
15. quīndecim	600. sēscentī, -ae, -a
16. sēdecim	700. septingentī, -ae, -a
17. septendecim	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
18. duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
19. ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	1000. mīlle
20. vīgintī	2000. duo mīlia
21. vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	10,000. decem mīlia
22. vīgintī duo <i>or</i> duo et vīgintī	100,000. centum mīlia
28. duodētrīgintā	
29. ūndētrīgintā	

411. ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1st. prīmus	8th. octāvus
2d. secundus	9th. nōnus
3d. tertius	10th. decimus
4th. quārtus	11th. ūndecimus
5th. quīntus	12th. duodecimus
6th. sextus	13th. tertius decimus
7th. septimus	14th. quārtus decimus

15th. quintus decimus	30th. tricēsimus
16th. sextus decimus	40th. quadrāgēsīmus
17th. septimus decimus	50th. quīnquāgēsīmus
18th. duodēvicēsīmus	60th. sexāgēsīmus
19th. ūndēvicēsīmus	70th. septuāgēsīmus
20th. vicēsīmus	80th. octōgēsīmus
21st. vicēsīmus prīmus or ūnus	90th. nōnāgēsīmus
et vicēsīmus	100th. centēsīmus
28th. duodētricēsīmus	200th. ducentēsīmus
29th. ūndētricēsīmus	1000th. millēsīmus

412. Personal Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.

SINGULAR.

N. egō, I.
G. mei, of me.
D. mihi (mī), to, for me.
Ac. me, me.
Ab. me, from, by, with, etc., me.

PLURAL.

nōs, we.
nostrum or nostri, of us.
nōbīs, to, for us.
nōs, us.
nōbīs, from, by, with, etc., us.

SECOND PERSON.

N, V. tū, (thou) you.	vōs, you.
G. tui, of (thee) you.	vestrum or vestri, of you.
D. tibi, to, for (thee) you.	vōbīs, to, for you.
Ac. tē, (thee) you.	vōs, you.
Ab. tē, from, by, with, etc., (thee) you.	vōbīs, from, by, with, etc., you.

THIRD PERSON.

Reflexive.

N. ———	———
G. suī, of him(self), her(self), it(self).	suī, of them(selves).
D. sibi, to, for him(self), etc.	sibi, to, for them(selves).
Ac. sē, sēsē, him(self), etc.	sē, sēsē, them(selves).
Ab. sē, sēsē, from, by, with, etc., him(self).	sē, sēsē, from, by, with, etc., them(selves).

413. Demonstrative Pronouns.

SINGULAR.

	<i>hic, this.</i>			<i>ille, that.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hūlus</i>	<i>hūlus</i>	<i>hūlus</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

SINGULAR.

				PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (īi)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>ēlus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>	<i>eīs (iis)</i>

idem, same.

<i>N.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	{ <i>eīdem</i> <i>(īidem)</i> <i>eaedem</i> <i>eadem</i>		
<i>G.</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>ēlusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem (iisdem)</i>		
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīdem (iisdem)</i>		

SINGULAR.

				PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

414. *Relative Pronoun.*

qui, who, which.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G. cūlus	cūlus	cūlus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

415. *Interrogative Pronoun.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G. cūlus	cūlus	cūlus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

416. *Indefinite Pronoun.*

SINGULAR.		
N. { allquis allqui }	{ aliqua aliqua }	aliquid
G.	alicujus	
D.	alicui	
Ac. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid
Ab. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
PLURAL.		
N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	

REGULAR VERBS.

First Conjugation.

417. Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

Stem: **amā-**.

Indicative.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

PRESENT.

I love, am loving, do love, etc.

I am loved, etc.

amō amāmus
amās amātis
amat amant

amor amāmur
amāris or -re amāmini
amātur amantur

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.

I was loved, etc.

amābam amābāmus
amābās amābātis
amābat amābant

amābar amābāmur
amābāris or -re amābāmini
amābātur amābantur

FUTURE.

I shall love, etc.

I shall be loved, etc.

amābō amābimus
amābis amābitis
amābit amābunt

amābor amābimur
amāberis or -re amābimini
amābitur amābuntur

PERFECT.

I have loved, I loved, etc.

I have been (was) loved, etc.

amāvī amāvimus
amāvisti amāvistis
amāvit amāverunt or -re

amātus $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sum} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{est} \end{array} \right.$ **amāti** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sumus} \\ \text{estis} \\ \text{sunt} \end{array} \right.$

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had loved, etc.**I had been loved, etc.*

amāveram amāverāmus
 amāverās amāverātis
 amāverat amāverant

amātus { eram amātī { erāmus
 { erās { erātis
 { erat { erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have loved, etc.**I shall have been loved, etc.*

amāverō amāverimus
 amāveris amāveritis
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { erō amātī { erimus
 { eris { eritis
 { erit { erunt

*Subjunctive.*¹**PRESENT.**

amem amēmus
 amēs amētis
 amet ament

amer amēmur
 amēris or-re amēmini
 amētur amentur

IMPERFECT.

amārem amārēmus
 amārēs amārētis
 amāret amārent

amārer amārēmur
 amārēris or-re amārēmini
 amārētur amārentur

PERFECT.

amāverim amāverimus
 amāveris amāveritis
 amāverit amāverint

amātus { sim amātī { simus
 { sis { sitis
 { sit { sint

PLUPERFECT.

amāvissem amāvissēmus
 amāvissēs amāvissētis
 amāvisset amāvissent

amātus { essem amātī { essēmus
 { essēs { essētis
 { esset { essent

¹ No satisfactory translation for the subjunctive can be given in the paradigms. It must be learned from the exercises illustrating the uses of the subjunctive.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**

amā, love thou.

amāre, be thou loved.

amāte, love ye.

amāmini, be ye loved.

FUTURE.

amātō, thou shalt love.

amātor, thou shalt be loved.

amātō, he shall love.

amātor, he shall be loved.

amātōte, you shall love.

amantō, they shall love.

amantor, they shall be loved.

Infinitive.

PRES. amāre, to love.

amārī, to be loved.

PERF. amāvisse, to have loved.

amātus esse, to have been loved.

FUT. amātūrus esse, to be
about to love.amātum irī, to be about to be
loved.*Participles.*

PRES. amāns, -antis, loving.

PERF. amātus, -a, -um, having

FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um,
about to love.

been loved.

*Gerund.**Gerundive.*

G. amandī, of loving.

amandus, -a, -um, to be loved.

D. amandō, for loving.

Ac. amandum, loving.

Ab. amandō, by loving.

Supine.

Ac. amātum, to love.

Ab. amātū, to love.

418. Second Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **habeō, habēre, habui, habitum, have, hold.**¹

Stem: **habē-**.

Indicative.

Active Voice.

I hold, etc.

habeō	habēmus
habēs	habētis
habet	habent

Passive Voice.

PRESENT.

I am held, etc.

habeor	habēmur
habēris or -re	habēmini
habētur	habentur

IMPERFECT.

I held, was holding, etc.

habēbam	habēbāmus
habēbās	habēbātis
habēbat	habēbant

I was held, etc.

habēbar	habēbāmur
habēbāris or -re	habēbāmini
habēbātur	habēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall hold, etc.

habēbō	habēbimus
habēbis	habēbitis
habēbit	habēbunt

I shall be held, etc.

habēbor	habēbimur
habēberis or -re	habēbimini
habēbitur	habēbuntur

PERFECT.

I have held, etc.

habui	habuimus
habuisti	habuistis
habuit	habuērunt or -re

I have been held, etc.

habitus	{ sum	habiti	{ sumus
	{ es		{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

¹ The meaning *have* is the more common, but *hold* is better adapted to the paradigm.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had held, etc.**I had been held, etc.*

habueram habuerāmus
 habuerās habuerātis
 habuerat habuerant

habitus { eram habitū { erāmus
 { erās { erātis
 { erat { erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have held, etc.**I shall have been held, etc.*

habuerō habuerimus
 habueris habueritis
 habuerit habuerint

habitus { erō habitū { erimus
 { eris { eritis
 { erit { erunt

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

habeam habeāmus
 habeās habeātis
 habeat habeant

habear habeāmur
 habeāris or -re habeāmini
 habeātur habeantur

IMPERFECT.

habērem habērēmus
 habērēs habērētis
 habēret habērent

habērer habērēmur
 habērēris or -re habērēmini
 habērētur habērentur

PERFECT.

habuerim habuerimus
 habueris habueritis
 habuerit habuerint

habitus { sim habitū { simus
 { sis { sitis
 { sit { sint

PLUPERFECT.

habuissem habuissēmus
 habuissēs habuissētis
 habuisset habuissent

habitus { essem habitū { essēmus
 { essēs { essētis
 { esset { essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**habē, *hold thou.*habēre, *be thou held.*habēte, *hold ye.*habēminī, *be ye held.***FUTURE.**habētō, *thou shalt hold.*habētor, *thou shalt be held.*habētō, *he shall hold.*habētor, *he shall be held.*habētōte, *you shall hold.*habentō, *they shall hold.*habentor, *they shall be held.**Infinitive.*PRES. habēre, *to hold.*habēri, *to be held.*PERF. habuisse, *to have held.*habitus esse, *to have been held.*FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be about to hold.*habitum iri, *to be about to be held.**Participles.*PRES. habēns, -entis, *holding.*PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um, *about to hold.**been held.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. habendī, *of holding.*habendus, -a, -um, *to be held.*D. habendō, *for holding.*AC. habendum, *holding.*AB. habendō, *by holding.**Supine.*AC. habitum, *to hold.*AB. habitū, *to hold.*

Third Conjugation.**419. Principal Parts: Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum.**

Stem: dūcē.

*Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō	dūcimus	dūcor	dūcimur
dūcis	dūcitis	dūceris or -re	dūcimini
dūcit	dūcunt	dūcitur	dūcuntur

IMPERFECT.*I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led, etc.*

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis	dūcēbāris or -re	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbat	dūcēbant	dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

FUTURE.*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam	dūcēmus	dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēs	dūcētis	dūcēris or -re	dūcēmini
dūcet	dūcent	dūcētur	dūcentur

PERFECT.*I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī	dūximus	ductus {	sum	ducti {	sumus
dūxistī	dūxistis		es		estis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -re		est		sunt

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram dūxerāmus
 dūxerās dūxerātis
 dūxerat dūxerant

ductus { eram ducti { erāmus
 { erās { erātis
 { erat { erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō dūxerimus
 dūxeris dūxeritis
 dūxerit dūxerint

ductus { erō ducti { erimus
 { eris { eritis
 { erit { erunt

Subjunctive.**PRESENT.**

dūcam dūcāmus
 dūcās dūcātis
 dūcat dūcant

dūcar dūcāmur
 dūcāris or -re dūcāmini
 dūcātur dūcantur

IMPERFECT.

dūcerem dūcerēmus
 dūcerēs dūcerētis
 dūceret dūcerent

dūcerer dūcerēmur
 dūcerēris or -re dūcerēmini
 dūcerētur dūcerentur

PERFECT.

dūxerim dūxerimus
 dūxeris dūxeritis
 dūxerit dūxerint

ductus { sim ducti { simus
 { sis { sitis
 { sit { sint

PLUPERFECT.

dūxissem dūxissemus
 dūxisseis dūxissetis
 dūxisset dūxisissent

ductus { essem ducti { essemus
 { esseis { essetis
 { esset { essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**dūc(e),¹ *lead thou.*dūcere, *be thou led.*dūcite, *lead ye.*dūcimini, *be ye led.***FUTURE.**dūcītō, *thou shalt lead.*dūcitor, *thou shalt be led.*dūcītō, *he shall lead.*dūcitor, *he shall be led.*dūcītōte, *ye shall lead.*dūcuntō, *they shall lead.*dūcuntor, *they shall be led.**Infinitive.*PRES. dūcere, *to lead.*dūcī, *to be led.*PERF. dūxisse, *to have led.*ductus esse, *to have been led.*FUT. ductūrus esse, *to be about to lead.*ductum iri, *to be about to be led.**Participles.*PRES. dūcēns, -entis, *leading.*PERF. ductus, -a, -um, *having*FUT. ductūrus, -a, -um, *about to lead.**been led.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. dūcendi, *of leading.*dūcendus, -a, -um, *to be led.*D. dūcendō, *for leading.*AC. dūcendum, *leading.*AB. dūcendō, *by leading.**Supine.*AC. ductum, *to lead.*AB. ductū, *to lead.*

¹ Dūce would be the regular form, but the imperatives of dūcō, dūcō, faciō, and ferō lose the ending -e.

Fourth Conjugation.**420.** Principal Parts: **Audiō, audire, audivi, auditum.**Stem: **audi.***Indicative.***Active Voice.****Passive Voice.****PRESENT.***I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

audiō	audimus	audior	audimur
audis	auditis	audiris or-re	audimini
audit	audiunt	auditur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT.*I heard, was hearing, did hear, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris or-re	audiēbāmini
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

FUTURE.*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiemus	audiar	audiemur
audies	audietis	audieris or-re	audiemini
audiet	audient	audietur	audientur

PERFECT.*I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audivi	audivimus	auditus { sum es est	auditi { sumus estis sunt
audivisti	audivistis		
audivit	audiverunt or-re		

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.***I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audiveram	audiverāmus	auditus {	eram	audīti {	erāmus
audiverās	audiverātis		erās		erātis
audiverat	audiverant		erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT.*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audiverō	audiverimus	auditus {	erō	audīti {	erimus
audiveris	audiveritis		eris		eritis
audiverit	audiverint		erit		erunt

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT.

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris or -re	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT.

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus {	sim	audīti {	simus
audiveris	audiveritis		sis		sitis
audiverit	audiverint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

audivissem	audivissēmus	auditus {	essem	audīti {	essēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis		essēs		essētis
audivisset	audivissent		esset		essent

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Imperative.***PRESENT.**

audī, *hear thou.*
audīte, *hear ye.*

audīre, *be thou heard.*
audimini, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.*
audītō, *he shall hear.*
audītōte, *ye shall hear.*
audiantō, *they shall hear.*

auditor, *thou shalt be heard.*
auditor, *he shall be heard.*

audiantor, *they shall be heard.*

Infinitive.

PRES. audire, <i>to hear.</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. audivisse, <i>to have heard.</i>	audītus esse, <i>to have been heard.</i>
FUT. auditūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	auditum iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

Participles.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, <i>hearing.</i>	PERF. auditus, -a, -um, <i>heard,</i>
FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to hear.</i>	<i>having been heard.</i>

*Gerund.**Gerundive.*

G. audiendī, <i>of hearing.</i>	audiendus, -a, -um, <i>to be heard.</i>
D. audiendō, <i>for hearing.</i>	
AC. audiendum, <i>hearing.</i>	
AB. audiendō, <i>by hearing.</i>	

Supine.

AC. auditum, <i>to hear.</i>
AB. auditū, <i>to hear.</i>

Third Conjugation: Verbs in -iō.

421. Verbs of the third conjugation in -iō have some forms of the present stem like the fourth conjugation. Before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē* they retain the *i* of the stem, but lose it elsewhere, except in the gerund and participle.

Principal Parts: **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**

Stem: **capī.**

Indicative.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

PRESENT.

I take, am taking, do take, etc.

I am taken, etc.

capīō capimur
capis capitis
capit capiunt

capior capimur
caperis or -re capimini
capitur capiuntur

IMPERFECT.

I took, was taking, did take, etc.

I was taken, etc.

capīēbam, etc.

capīēbar, etc.

FUTURE.

I shall take, etc.

I shall be taken, etc.

capiam capiēmus
capiēs capiētis
capiet capient

capiar capiēmur
capiēris or -re capiēmini
capiētur capientur

PERFECT.

I have taken, took, etc.

I have been (was) taken, etc.

cēpī, etc.

captus sum, etc.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.****PLUPERFECT.**

I had taken, etc.
cēperam, etc.

I had been taken, etc.
captus eram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have taken, etc.
cēperō, etc.

I shall have been taken, etc.
captus erō, etc.

*Subjunctive.***PRESENT.**

capiam capiāmus
capiās capiātis
capiat capiant

capiar capiāmur
capiāris or -re capiāmini
capiātur capiantur

IMPERFECT.

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

PERFECT.

cēperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpisse, etc.

captus essem, etc.

*Imperative.***PRESENT.**

cape, take (*thou*).
capite, take (*ye*).

capere, be (*thou*) taken.
capimini, be (*ye*) taken.

FUTURE.

capitō, thou shalt take.
capitō, he shall take.
capitōte, ye shall take.
capiuntō, they shall take.

capitor, thou shalt be taken.
capitor, he shall be taken.
capiuntor, they shall be taken.

Active Voice.**Passive Voice.***Infinitive.*PRES. *capere, to take.*capi, *to be taken.*PERF. *cēpisse, to have taken.*captus esse, *to have been taken.*FUT. *captūrus esse, to be about
to take.*captum irī, *to be about to be
taken.**Participles.*PRES. *capīēns, -lentis, taking.*PERF. *captus, -a, -um, taken,*FUT. *captūrus, -a, -um, about
to take.**having been taken.**Gerund.**Gerundive.*G. *capīendi, of taking.*capīendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*D. *capīendō, for taking.*AC. *capīendum, taking.*AB. *capīendō, by taking.**Supine.*AC. *captum, to take.*AB. *captū, to take.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

422. Principal Parts : **Sum, esse, fui.**

Indicative.

PRESENT.

I am, etc.

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

IMPERFECT.

I was, etc.

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

FUTURE.

I shall be, etc.

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

PERFECT.

I was, have been, etc.

fui	fuimus
fuisti	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt or -ēre

PLUPERFECT.

I had been, etc.

fueram	fuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis
fuerat	fuerant

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have been, etc.

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

sim	sīmus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint

IMPERFECT.

essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent

PERFECT.

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem	fuissemus
fuissets	fuissetis
fuisset	fuisissent

Imperative.

PRESENT.

es, be thou.

este, be ye.

FUTURE.

estō, thou shalt be.

estōte, you shall be.

estō, he shall be.

suntō, they shall be.

Infinitive.

PRES. esse, to be.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

FUT. { futūrus esse, } to be about to be.
 { fore, }

Participle.

FUT. futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

Compounds of Sum.

423. Principal Parts: Possum, posse, potui, be able.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

possim	possimus
possis	possitis
possit	possint

IMPERFECT.

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

IMPERFECT.

possem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

FUTURE.

poterō

PERFECT.

potuī

PERFECT.

potuerim

PLUPERFECT.

potueram

PLUPERFECT.

potuissem

FUTURE PERFECT.

potuerō

Infinitive.

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

Participle.

PRES. potēns, -entis

424.

Principal Parts:

Prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, be profitable.

Indicative.

PRESENT.

prōsum	prōsumus
prōdes	prōdestis
prōdest	prōsunt

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

prōsim	prōsimus
prōsis	prōsitis
prōsit	prōsint

IMPERFECT.

prōderam

IMPERFECT.

prōdessem

FUTURE.

prōderō

PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
prōfui		prōfuerim	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
prōfueram		prōfuissem	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
prōfuerō			
<i>Imperative.</i>			
PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
prōdes	prōdeste	prōdestō	prōdestōte
<i>Infinitive.</i>			
PRES. prōdesse		PERF. prōfuisse	
FUT. prōfutūrus esse			
<i>Participle.</i>			
FUT. prōfutūrus, -a, -um			

425.

Principal Parts:

Volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.**Nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling.****Mālō, mālle, mālui, be more willing, prefer.***Indicative.*

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam	nōlam	mālam

PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PERF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive.

PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint
IMPERF.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
	vellet	nōllet	māllet
	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
	vellent	nōllent	māllent
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative.

PRES.	—	nōlī nōlite	—
FUT.	—	nōlītō, etc.	—

Infinitive.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—
--------------	--------	--------	---

426. Principal Parts: **Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry.**

Active.**Passive.***Indicative.*

PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris <i>or -re</i>	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Subjunctive.

PRES.	feram	ferar
IMPERF.	ferrem	ferrer
PERF.	tulerim	lātus sim
PLUP.	tulissem	lātus essem

Imperative.

PRES.	fer ¹	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Infinitive.

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

Participles.

PRES.	ferēns	PERF. lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	

¹ See 394, note on imperative.

Gerund.

G.	ferendī
D.	ferendō
Ac.	ferendum
Ab.	ferendō

Gerundive.

ferendus

Supine.

Ac.	lātum
Ab.	lātū

427. Principal Parts: Eō, ire, ii or ivī, Itum, go.

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.

Indicative.

PRES.	eō	īmus	fīō	fīmus
	īs	ītis	fīs	fītis
	it	eunt	fit	fiunt
IMPERF.	ībam		fīēbam	
FUT.	ībō		fiam	
PERF.	ii (ivī)		factus sum	
PLUP.	ieram		factus eram	
FUT. PERF.	ierō		factus erō	

Subjunctive.

PRES.	eam		fiam	
IMPERF.	irem		fierem	
PERF.	ierim (īverim)		factus sim	
PLUP.	īssem (īvissem, iissem)		factus essem	

Imperative.

PRES.	ī	īte	fī	fīte
FUT.	ītō	ītōte	fītō	fītōtē
	ītō	euntō	fītō	fīuntō

Infinitive.

PRES.	īre	ferī
PERF.	isse (īvisse, iisse)	factus esse
FUT.	itūrus esse	factum irī

Participles.

PRES.	iēns, GEN. euntis	PERF. factus
FUT.	itūrus	

*Gerund.¹**Gerundive.*

G. eundī	Ac. eundum	faciendus
D. eundō	Ab. eundō	

Supine.

Ac. itum	Ab. itū
----------	---------

¹ The gerundive of *eō* occurs in the neuter, *eundum*.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.	<i>indef.</i>	= indefinite.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.	<i>interr.</i>	= interrogative.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.	<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.	<i>n.</i>	= neuter.
<i>c.</i>	= common gender.	<i>pass.</i>	= passive.
<i>cf.</i>	= compare.	<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.	<i>perf.</i>	= perfect.
<i>dat.</i>	= dative.	<i>pl.</i>	= plural.
<i>dem.</i>	= demonstrative.	<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun.
<i>dep.</i>	= deponent.	<i>rel.</i>	= relative.
<i>f.</i>	= feminine.	<i>sing.</i>	= singular.
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive.	<i>subst.</i>	= substantive.
<i>indecl.</i>	= indeclinable.	<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.

A.

- ā*, *ab*, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.
absum, -esse, *āfui*, *āfutūrus*,
 be absent, be away, be distant.
āc (atque), *conj.*, and.
accidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall upon, happen.
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, chide.
ācer, *ācris*, *ācre*, *adj.*, sharp, active.
aciēs, -eī, *f.*, line of battle.
ācritēr, *adv.*, sharply. [near.
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward,
addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-
 tum, lead to, induce.
adhībēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibi-
 tum, have present, call in.
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be
 present, assist.
adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*, youth,
 young man.
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, arrival.
adversus, -a, -um, (*part. of*
advertō), *adj.*, adverse, un-
 favorable.
Aedui, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aeduans,
 a Gallic tribe.
aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer.
ager, *agri*, *m.*, field, country.
āgmen, -minis, *n.*, line of march.
agō, *agere*, *ēgi*, *āctum*, drive,
 do, act.
agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.
 albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.
 allēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to another, unfavorable.
 aliquis, -quae (-qua), -quid, (*and* aliqui, -qua, -quod), *indef. pron.*, somebody, something.
 alius, -a, -ud, (*gen.* alius, *dat.* alii), *adj.*, other, another; alius . . . alius, one . . . another.
 Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, Allobroges, a Gallic tribe.
 alter, -era, -erum, (*gen.* alterius, *dat.* alteri), *adj.*, one (*of two*), the other (*of two*).
 altitūdō, -inis, *f.*, height, depth.
 altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.
 amicitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
 amicus, -i, *m.*, friend.
 amittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum (send away), let go, lose.
 amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love.
 angustiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, narrowness, narrowness.
 animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, attend to, notice.
 animal, -ālia, *n.*, animal.
 animus, -i, *m.*, spirit, courage, mind.
 annus, -i, *m.*, year.
 ante, *prep.* with *acc.*; also *adv.*, before.
 antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, old.
 apertus, -a, -um, (*part.* of aperīō), *adj.*, open.
 appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name.

apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, near, among, with.
 aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
 aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle.
 arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, think, believe, judge.
 arbor, arboris, *f.*, tree.
 Ariovistus, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus, a German chieftain.
 arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.
 ars, artis, *f.*, art.
 Athēnae, -arum, *f. pl.*, Athens.
 atque (ac), *conj.*, and.
 auctoritās, -tātis, *f.*, influence, authority.
 audeō, audēre, ausus sum, (*semi-dēp.*), dare.
 audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, hear.
 autem, *conj.* (*postpositive*), but.
 auxillum, -i, *n.*, help, assistance, aid.

B.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, barbarian.
 Belgae, -arum, *m. pl.*, Belgae, a division of the Gauls.
 Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Bellovacī, a Gallic tribe.
 bellum, -i, *n.*, war.
 bene, *adv.*, well.
 Bibracte, -is, *n.*, Bibracte, a town in Gaul.
 bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good.
 brevis, -e, *adj.*, short.
 Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.
 Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, British; *masc. used as noun*, Briton.
 Brūtus, -i, *m.*, Brutus, a Roman name.

C.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum,
fall.

caedēs, -is, f., slaughter.

Caesar, -aris, m., Cæsar.

capīō, capere, cēpī, captum,
take, capture.

captivus, -i, m., captive, prisoner.

caput, -itis, n., head.

carmen, -inis, n., song, poem.

carrus, -i, m., cart, wagon.

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Carthage, a city in Africa.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear.

Casticus, -i, m., Casticus.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp.

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; *abl.*
as *prep.* with *gen.*, because of,
on account of, for the sake
of.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., quick,
rapid.

celeritās, -tātis, f., quickness,
speed.

celeriter, adv., quickly.

cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conceal,
hide.

centum, indecl. numeral adj.,
hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion,
commander of one hundred
men.

certus, -a, -um, adj., certain, sure.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero, a Roman.

circiter, adv., about.

circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum,
put around, surround.

civis, -is, c., citizen.

civitās, -tātis, f., state.

clāmor, -ōris, m., shout.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., famous,
renowned.

coepī, -isse, (no present), began.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think,
ponder.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, recognize, learn; *in perfect*, know.

cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, cōactum,
collect, compel, force.

cohors, -hortis, f., cohort, *c tenth part of a legion*.

collis, -is, m., hill.

colloquium, -i, n., parley, conference.

columba, -ae, f., dove.

comes, -itis, c., companion.

commēātus, -ūs, m., supplies.

committō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, entrust; *with proelium*, engage in battle.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, fill.

concilium, -i, n., meeting, council.

cōnferō, -ferre, contuli, collātum, bring together, collect.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish (do up), wear out.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, assert; *also*, strengthen, encourage.

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw together, hurl.

cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, try, endeavor.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdi, -sessum, (sit together), take a position, encamp.

cōnsiliū, -i, *n.*, plan, counsel, advice.
 cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, *no supine*, (stand together), stand one's ground, halt.
 cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, catch sight of, perceive, spy, see.
 cōstitūō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, arrange (*one's mind*), decide, draw up (*an army*).
 cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, accustom oneself, become accustomed.
 cōnsul, -ulls, *m.*, consul, *head of the Roman republic*.
 contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, strive, hasten.
 contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-
 tum, hold together, restrain.
 contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against.
 conveniō, -venire, -veni, -ven-
 tum, come together, convene.
 convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call together.
 cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.*, forces of soldiers.
 Corinthus, -i, *f.*, Corinth, a city in Greece.
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, a Roman name.
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of an army*).
 corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, garland.
 corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
 cottidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily.
 cottidiē, *adv.*, daily.
 crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēdi-
 tum, believe, trust.

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blame.
 cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, to-
 gether with.
 cum, *conj.*, when, as, since, al-
 though.
 cūr, *adv.*, why?
 cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take care,
 cause.
 currō, currere, cucurrī, cur-
 sum, run.
 cūstōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard, keeper.

D.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concern-
 ing, of (*in composition*, from,
 away, down).
 dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe,
 ought.
 decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.
 decimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tenth.
 dēditō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
 dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-
 tum, lead away, withdraw.
 dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēn-
 sum, protect, defend.
 dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tired.
 dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 please, delight.
 dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 consider, deliberate.
 dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum,
 pick from, choose.
 dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 show, demonstrate.
 dēsūm, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be
 away, fail.
 dexter, -ra, -rum, *adj.*, right
 (*hand, etc.*).
 dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, say,
 tell.

diēs, diēi, m. (*sometimes f. in sing.*), day.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.

diligentia, -ae, f., diligence.

dimittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, send away, dismiss.

dis, inseparable prefix, apart;
cf. **dimittō, discēdō.**

discēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, withdraw.

discipulus, -ī, m., pupil.

dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike.

diū, adv., long, a long time;
comp. **diūtius, superl. diūtissimē.**

dividō, -videre, -visī, -visum, separate, divide.

Divitiacus, -ī, m., Divitiacus, an Aeduan noble.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

doleō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, grieve, be pained.

dolor, -ōris, m., grief, pain.

domina, -ae, f., mistress.

dominus, -ī, m., master.

domus, -ūs, f., house, home.

dōnum, -ī, n., gift.

dobitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, doubt, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful.

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., two hundred.

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, lead.

Dumnorix, -igis, m., Dumnorix, an Aeduan, brother of Divitiacus.

duō, -ae, -ō, adj., two.

dux, duclis, m., leader.

E.

ē (ex), prep. with abl., out of, from.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out or away.

efferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum, bring or carry out, produce.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, effect.

egō, mei, pers. pron., I.

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, come out.

eō, ire, ivi or iī, itum, go.

eō, adv., thither, to that place.

eōdem, adv., to the same place.

epistula, -ae, f., letter.

eques, equitis, m., horseman;
pl., cavalry.

equitatus, -ūs, m., cavalry.

equus, -ī, m., horse.

et, conj., and; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

etiam, conj., even, also.

ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, from.

exeō, -ire, -ivi or -iī, -itum, go out, go away.

exercitus, -ūs, m., army.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think, judge.

explōrator, -tōris, m., scout.

expūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take by storm.

expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wait for, expect.

exterus (also exte), -a, -um, adj., outer, outside, external; —*comp.* **exterior**, outer; —*superl.* **extrēmus**, uttermost, last, farthest.

F.

fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, fable.
facile, *adv.* (of **facilis**), easily.
facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.
faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, do, make.
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautum**, favor.
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman.
ferē, *adv.*, almost.
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring.
fidēs, **fidei**, *f.*, faith, confidence, pledge.
fidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful.
filla, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
fillus, -ī, *m.*, son.
finis, -is, *m.*, end, border; *pl.*, territory.
finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighboring (bordering on); *masc. as noun*, neighbor.
fiō, **fiērī**, **factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become.
fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, flood, waves.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune.
frāter, **frātris**, *m.*, brother.
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain.
fruor, **frui**, **fruitus** and **fructus** sum, enjoy.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
fugiō, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**, flee.
fungor, **fungi**, **fūnetus sum**, perform.

G.

Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman name.
Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, a country

nearly the same as modern France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Gallic.
Gallus, -ī, *m.*, Gaul, an inhabitant of the country Gaul.
Genāva, -ae, *f.*, Geneva, a town in Switzerland.
genus, -eris, *n.*, race, kind, sort.
Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, German; *masc. as noun*, a German.
gerō, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestum**, carry on, do; **bellum gerere**, wage war.
gladius, -ī, *m.*, sword.
gracilis, -e, *adj.*, slender.
Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece.
Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, favor, influence.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe.
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, deeply.

H.

habeō, **habēre**, **habui**, **habitu**m, have, hold.
Hannibal, -is, *m.*, Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general.
Helvētius, -ī, *m.*, Helvetian, of a Gallic tribe.
hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters.
hic, **haec**, **hōc**, *dem. pron.*, this.
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, pass the winter.
hiems, **hiemis**, *f.*, winter.
Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer, the Greek poet.

homō, hominis, m., man, human being.
hōra, -ae, f., hour.
hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, encourage, urge, exhort.
hortus, -i, m., garden.
hostis, -is, m., enemy (*in war*).
hūmānitās, -tātis, f., culture.
humilis, -e, adj., lowly, humble.

I (vowel).

ibi, adv., there.
idem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., suitable.
ignis, -is, m., fire.
ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that, that well known.
impedimentum, -i, n., hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.
impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, hinder, impede.
imperātor, -ōris, m., general, commander-in-chief.
imperium, -i, n., command, rule, power.
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command, order.
impetus, -ūs, m., charge, attack, fury.
in, prep. with acc. and abl.;
 1. *with acc.*, into, to, against;
 2. *with abl.*, in, on.
in-, negative prefix, un (*as inimicus = in + amicus, unfriend, enemy*).
incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, fall into, in with, or upon.
incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, arouse.

incola, -ae, m., inhabitant.
incolō, -colere, -colui, -cultum, inhabit, dwell in.
incrēdibilis, -e, adj., incredible.
inferō, -ferre, intuli, illātum, bear into or against; **bellum inferre,** wage offensive war.
inferus, -a, -um, adj., below, beneath; — *comp.* inferior, lower, inferior; — *superl.* **infimus or imus,** lowest (at the bottom of).
ingēns, -gentis, adj., huge, vast.
inimicus, -i, m., enemy (*as a private person*).
initium, -i, n., beginning.
iniūria, -ae, f., wrong.
inopia, -ae, f., want.
instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, draw up, form.
insula, -ae, f., island.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, understand.
inter, prep. with acc., between, among.
interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, kill.
ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron., my-, your-, him-, etc., self.
is, ea, id, dem. pron., that.
iste, ista, istud, dem. pron., that (*of yours*).
ita, adv., so, thus.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
iter, itineris, n., road, route, journey, march.

I (consonant).

iaciō, -acere, -iēci, -iactum, throw, hurl.

iam, *adv.*, already, now.
 iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum,
 order, command.
 iūdex, iūdicis, *m.*, judge.
 Iūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a Roman name.
 iūnior, -ius, *adj.*, (*comp.* of
 iuvenis, young, contracted for
 iuvenior), younger.
 Iūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura mountains,
 in Switzerland.
 iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, law.
 iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandi, *n.*,
 oath.
 iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just.
 iuvenis, -e, *adj.*, young; as a
 noun, young man.
 iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, aid,
 help, assist.

L.

Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, one
 of Cæsar's lieutenants.
 labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labor.
 labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, toil,
 labor.
 laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, gay.
 lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.
 lātītūdō, -dinis, *f.*, width,
 breadth.
 lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, praise.
 lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, envoy.
 legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion, a division
 of the Roman army.
 legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, read
 (also gather).
 lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
 libenter, *adv.*, gladly.
 liber, -bri, *m.*, book.
 liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.

liberi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, of Iber,
 children.
 liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set
 free.
 lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
 litus, litoris, *n.*, shore.
 locus, -i, *m.*, (*pl.* loca, *n.*), place.
 longē, *adv.*, far.
 longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, length. 3⁰
 longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long.
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

M.

magister, -tri, *m.*, master,
 teacher.
 magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magis-
 tracy, magistrate.
 māgnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, size, mag-
 nitude.
 māgnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large,
 great.
 mālō, mālle, mālui, no supine,
 wish more, prefer.
 malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.
 maneo, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus,
 remain, wait.
 manipulus, -i, *m.*, manipule, a
 small company of soldiers.
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, also band.
 Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus.
 mare, maris, *n.*, sea.
 Massilia, -ae, *f.*, Massilia, the
 Latin name of Marseilles.
 māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
 mātūrē, *adv.*, early.
 mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe.
 medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle of.
 memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory.
 mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind.
 mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
mercātor, -tōris, *m.*, merchant.
meus, -a, -um, *possess. pron.*,
 my, mine.
miles, militis, *m.*, soldier.
militāris, -e, *adj.*, military.
militia, -ae, *f.*, military service.
mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, thou-
 sand; *pl.*, **milla**, -um, *n.*, fol-
 lowed by *gen.*, thousand.
mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, wonder
 at, admire.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched.
mittō, mittere, misi, missum,
 send.
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn,
 advise, admonish.
mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom; *pl.*,
 manners.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum,
 move.
muller, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, multitude.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*,
 many.
mūnitō, -ire, -ivī or -iī, -itum,
 fortify.
mūnitō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūnitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (*perf.*
pass. part. of mūnitō), fortified.
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall.

N.

nam, *conj.*, for.
nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tell,
 narrate.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be
 born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature.
nātus, -ūs, *m.*, birth. *Used*
only in abl. sing.; **māiōrēs**
nātū, elders by birth, old
 men.
nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, boat.
-ne, *enclitic interrog. particle*,
simply denoting a question;
in indirect questions some-
times whether.
nē, *negative particle*, that . . .
 not, lest, not to; **nē** . . .
quidem, not even.
necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
nēmō, -inis, *m.*, nobody, no one.
Not used in gen. and abl., the
corresponding forms of nullus
being used instead.
neque (**nec**), *conj.*, and not, nor;
neque . . . **neque**, neither . . .
 nor.
niger, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.
nihil, *n., indecl.*, nothing.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
nōbīlis, -e, *adj.*, noble, of high
 birth, famous.
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, harm,
 injure.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *no supine*,
 be unwilling.
nōmen, -minis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōnne, *interrog. adv.* (*intro-*
ducing a question expecting
the answer "yes"), not?
noster, -tra, -trum, *possess.*
pron., our.
novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.

nāllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, not any, no one.
num, *interrog. particle* (*expecting the answer "no"*), in *indirect questions*, whether.
numerus, -i, *m.*, number.
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *report*, announce.
nūntius, -i, *m.*, messenger.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
obses, **obsidis**, *m.*, hostage.
obtineō, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *hold*.
occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset.
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum, *kill*.
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *seize*, take.
octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty.
omniō, *adv.*, altogether, in all.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all.
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town, walled town.
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *attack*, storm.
opus, **operis**, *n.*, work.
orātīō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, oration.
ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, *m.*, rank, order.
Orgetorix, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix, a Helvetian nobleman.
ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *adorn*, deck.

P.

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp.
pār, **paris**, *adj.*, equal.
parcō, -ere, **pepercī** (**parsī**), **parsūrus** (**parcitūrus**), *spare*.

parēns, -entis, *c.*, parent.
pāreō, -ēre, **pāruī**, **pāritūrus**, *obey*.
parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare*, furnish.
pars, **partis**, *f.*, part.
parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace; **mille passūs**, a Roman mile.
pater, **patris**, *m.*, father.
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native country.
pauci, -ae, -a, *adj.*, used almost exclusively in the plural, few.
pāx, **pācis**, *f.*, peace.
pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, wealth, ¹⁰⁰ (originally cattle; cf. **pecus**).
pecus, -oris, *n.*, flock, cattle.
pedes, **peditis**, *m.*, foot-soldier.
pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, on foot, of infantry.
pellō, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, *repel*, drive off.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through.
per-, *adv.*, in composition, very (as **per-facilis**, very easy).
periculum, -i, *n.*, peril, danger.
peritus, -a, -um, *adj.*, skilful, experienced.
persequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, *pursue*.
persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *persuade*.
pertineō, -ēre, -ui, *no supine*, hold through, extend.
perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *disturb* greatly.
pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *come through*, arrive.

pēs, pedis, m., foot, *as part of the body, and also as a measure.*

petō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, seek, ask.
pictūra, -ae, f., picture, painting.

pilum, -i, n., javelin.

poēta, -ae, m., poet.

polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum, promise.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, put.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge.

populus, -i, m., people, nation.

porta, -ae, f., gate, door.

portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, carry.

portus, -ūs, m., port, harbor.

possum, posse, potuī, no supine, be able, can, have power.

post, prep. with acc., after, behind; *also adv.*, afterwards.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., next, following.

pōstulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, demand.

potēns, potentis, adj., powerful.

pōtestās, -tātis, f., power.

potior, potirī, potitus sum, get possession of.

praefērō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, carry before, prefer.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, place before, put in command of.

praesidium, -i, n., guard, escort, protection.

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, command, be at the head of.

primus, -a, -um, adj., first.

princeps, principis, m., chief.

prior, prius, adj., earlier, former.

prō, prep. with abl., before, for.

Procillus, -i, m., a Roman name. *Gaius Valerius Procillus was sent by Caesar as envoy to Ariovistus.*

proellum, -i, n., battle.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure.

proficiācor, proficiāci, profectus sum, set out, depart.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, go (or come) forth or forward.

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, hinder, keep from.

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hurry.

propior, propius, adj., (*comp. of stem of prope, near*), nearer; *superl. proximus, -a, -um.* nearest, next.

propter, prep. with acc., on account of.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus, be profitable.

prōvincia, -ae, f., province.

proximus. See propior.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., public.

puella, -ae, f., girl.

puer, pueri, m., boy.

pūgna, -ae, f., fight, battle.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful, pretty.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think.

Q.

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty.

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, ask, inquire about.

quam, adv., than, as.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., interrog.,
how great? how much? *rel.*,
as great, as; **tantus . . .**
quantus, so great . . . as.

quārtus, -a, -um, ordinal num-
eral adj., fourth.

quattuor, indecl. numeral adj.,
four.

-que, enclitic conj., and, to be
translated before the word at
the end of which it stands.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who,
which, what; indef., any.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam,
indef. pron., a certain (one,
etc.).

quidem, conj. Often not to be
translated, except by empha-
sizing the word before it; it
sometimes, indeed, at least;
nē . . . quidem, not even.

quīn, conj., that, but that.

quinque, indecl. numeral adj.,
five.

quīntus, -a, -um, ordinal num-
eral adj., fifth.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron.,
who? which? what?

quis, quae (qua), quid, indef.
pron., used after sī, nī, nē, and
num, any, any one, any thing.

quisquam, quidquam, indef.
pron., used only after negatives
and negative expressions, any
one, anything.

quisque, quaeque, quidque,
indef. pron., each, each one,
every.

quot, indecl. pron., interrog.,
how many? relative, as many
as.

R.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
take back; also reflexive, sē
recipere, betake oneself, retire,
withdraw, retreat.

redeō, -īre, -ī, -itum, go back,
return.

rēgina, -ae, f., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, f., region.

rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom, royal
power.

relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lic-
tum, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remain-
ing, rest of.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī,
-mānsūrus, remain, stay.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
report, announce.

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum,
find, find out.

rēs, rei, f., thing.

resistō, -ere, restitī, no supine,
resist, withstand.

respondeō, -ēre, respondi, re-
sponsum, answer, reply.

rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, f.
(really a noun, rēs, and adj.,
pūblica, the public thing),
state, republic.

retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum,
retain, hold back.

revertor, revertī, reversus sum
and revertō, -ere, -vertī,
-versum, the deponent forms
used in the present system,
return, go or come back.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine, di-
viding Gaul from Germany.

Rhodanus, -i, *m.*, the Rhone,
a river of southern Gaul.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank of a river,
shore of a lake.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Roman;
masc. as subst., a Roman.

rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose.

S.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

satīs, *adv.*, enough.

sciō, *scire*, *scīvi*, *scitum*, know.

scribō, -ere, *scripsī*, *scriptum*,
write.

scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, second,
favorable; **rēs secundae**, prosper-
ity.

sed, *conj.*, but.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate.

senex, *senis*, *m.*, old man.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of
or belonging to the Sequani,
a Gallic tribe; *masc. as*
subst., a Sequanian; *pl.*, the
Sequani.

sequor, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*,
follow.

serva, -ae, *f.*, female slave, maid-
servant.

servus, -i, *m.*, slave, servant.

sex, *indecl. numeral adj.*, six.

sexāgintā, *indecl. numeral adj.*,
sixty.

sextus, -a, -um, *ordinal numeral*
adj., sixth.

sī, *conj.*, if.

signum, -i, *n.*, sign, standard,
signal.

silva, -ae, *f.*, woods, forest.

similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar.

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left
(hand, etc.).

socius, -i, *m.*, ally.

sōl, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun.

soleō, -ēre, *solitus sum*, be
accustomed.

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone.

soror, *sorōris*, *f.*, sister.

spēs, *speī*, *f.*, hope, expectation.

statim, *adv.*, immediately.

stō, *stāre*, *stetī*, *statūrus*,
stand.

sub, *prep. usually with abl.*,
under, at the foot of, close to;
used with the acc. after verbs of
motion.

sui, *sibi*, *sē*, *reflexive pron. of the*
third person; *no nom.*, him-
self, herself, itself, him, her, it.

sum, *esse*, *fui*, *futūrus*, be.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.*, highest,
topmost, greatest, *often at the*
top of or to the top of (superl.
of the root of superus).

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-
feat.

supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
be over, survive.

superus, -a, -um, *adj.*, upper,
higher; *comp.*, superior;
superl., summus.

sūspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion.

sūspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spec-
tum, suspect.

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum,
hold up (under), withstand.

suus, -a, -um, possess. pron.,
third person, his, her, its,
their.

T.

tam, adv., so, so greatly, so
much.

tamen, adv., nevertheless, still,
yet, notwithstanding.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great.

tēlum, -i, n., (missile) weapon.

tempestās, -tātis, f., storm, tem-
pest.

tempus, -oris, n., time.

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.

terra, -ae, f., earth, land.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, ordinal numeral
adj., third.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine,
fear.

timor, -ōris, m., fear, alarm.

Titus, -i, m., Titus, a Roman
name.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., whole, en-
tire, all.

trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give
over, betray.

trāns, prep. with acc., across.

trānseō, -ire, -li, -itum, go
across, cross.

trecentī, -ae, -a, numeral adj.,
three hundred.

trēs, tria, numeral adj., three.

tū, tui, tibi, tē, personal pron.,
second person, thou, you; *pl.*,
vōs, you.

turris, -is, f., tower, turret.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj., second
person, thy, your.

U.

ubi, adv., interrog. and rel.,
where (*sometimes* when).

undique, adv., on or from all
sides.

ūnus, -a, -um, (gen. ūnūs),
numeral adj., one, (*sometimes*
the only one, alone).

urbs, urbis, f., city.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use; *also* need.

ut, conj., with subj., that, in order
that, so that; *also* **adv.,** as,
when.

ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, employ.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife.

V.

valeō, -ēre, valūī, valitūrus, be
strong.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay
waste.

vectigal, -ālis, n., tax.

vēlōciter, adv., swiftly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift.

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come.

ventus, -i, m., wind.

vereor, -ēri, veritus, fear, be
afraid of.

Vergilius, -ī, m., Virgil, a Roman.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

vescor, -ī, eat.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj.,
your.

vicēsīmus, -a, -um, ordinal
numeral, twentieth.

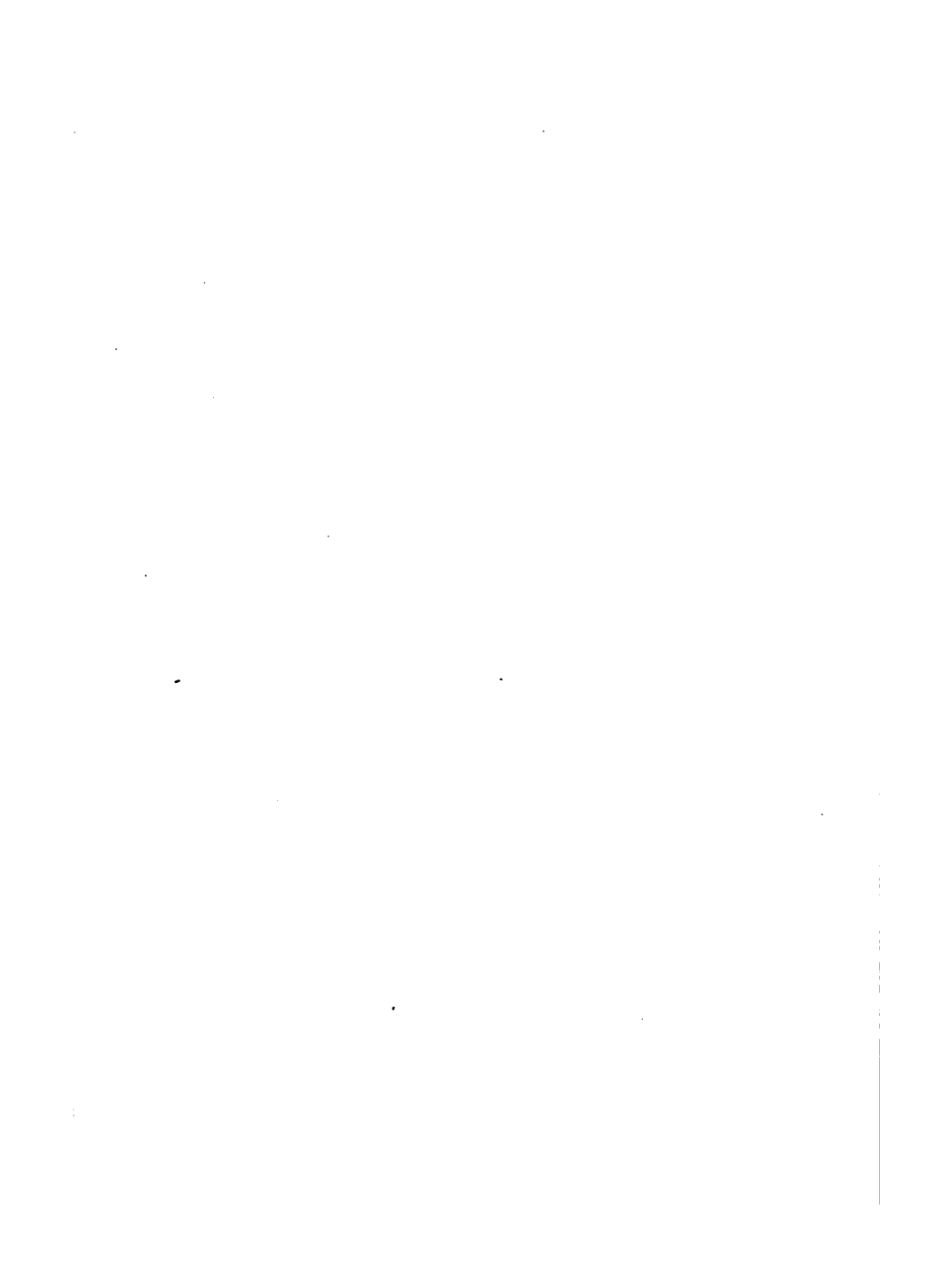
victor, -ōris, m., conqueror,
victor.

vicus, -ī, m., village.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, visum, see.

vigilia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , watch.	vocō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call.
vigintī , <i>numeral adj.</i> , twenty.	volō , velle, voluī, wish, be willing.
vincō , -ere, vicī, victum, conquer.	voluntās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , will, good will.
vir , virī, <i>m.</i> , man.	voluptās , -ātis, <i>f.</i> , pleasure.
virgō , -inis, <i>f.</i> , maiden, virgin.	vōs . See tū.
virtūs , -ūtis, <i>f.</i> , virtue.	vōx , vōcis, <i>f.</i> , voice.
vis , vis, <i>f.</i> , force; <i>pl.</i> , virēs, virium, strength.	vulnerō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound.
vitō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid.	vulnus , -eris, <i>n.</i> , wound. <i>Q. 6</i>
vivō , -ere, vixī, victum, live.	

596 words



ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The figures 1, 2, 3, or 4 after a verb denote that the verb is regular and of the first, second, third, or fourth conjugation. Other abbreviations are the same as those used in the Latin-English vocabulary.

A.

able (be), possum, posse, potui.	advantage , ūsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>
about , dē (<i>with abl.</i>), circum (<i>with acc.</i>), circiter (<i>adv.</i>).	adverse , adversus, -a, -um.
absent (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.	adversity , rēs (rērum, <i>etc.</i>) adversae.
abundance , cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	affairs , rēs, rērum.
accomplish , efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	advice , cōsiliū, -ī, <i>n.</i>
account (on account of), causā (<i>with gen.</i>), ob, propter (<i>with acc.</i>).	Aeduan (Haeduan), Aeduus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
accuse , accūsō, 1.	against , contrā, in, (<i>with acc.</i>).
accustom (oneself), cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	age , aetās, -ātis, <i>f.</i> ; in or by age, nātū.
accustomed (be), soleō, -ēre, solitus sum (<i>semi-dep.</i>); cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.	agreeable , grātus, -a, -um.
across , trāns (<i>with acc.</i>).	aid , auxilium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum; prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus. [(<i>adv.</i>).
act , agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.	all , omnis, -e; in all, omnīnō
active , ācer, ācris, ācre.	Allobroges , Allobrogēs, -um, <i>m.</i>
admire , mīror, 1, <i>dep.</i>	ally , socius, -ī, <i>m.</i>
adorn , ōrnō, 1.	almost , ferē.
advance , prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.	alone , sōlus, -a, -um.
	already , iam.
	also , etiam.
	although , cum.
	altogether , omnīnō.
	always , semper.
	am. See be.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
among, inter (*with acc.*), apud (*with acc.*).
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um.
and, et, ac, atque, -que; **and not**, neque (nec).
animal, animal, -ālis, *n.*
announce, nūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
another, alius, -a, -um; **belong to another**, aliēnus, -a, -um.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, -dī, respōsum.
any (body or thing), aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid, (*also quis, qua or quae, quid*).
approach, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
ardent, ācer, ācris, ācre.
Arlovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
around, circum (*with acc.*); **put around**, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum.
arouse, incitō, 1.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
art, ars, artis, *f.*; **art of war**, rēs militāris.
as, quam, cum.
ascertain, reperiō, -īre, repperī, reperitum.
ask, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum; quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesitum.
assemble, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
assert, cōfirmō, 1.
assist, iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
astonished (be astonished), mīror, 1, dep.

at, in (*with abl.*).
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*, opugnō, 1; **make an attack**, impetum facere.
attend, adimadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
attention (pay). See attend.
avoid, vitō, 1.
away, ā(ab), *and, in composition*, dē; **lead away**, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, dēdūcō, -ere, dūxī, -ductum; **go away**, abeō, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -itum; **send away**, dimittō, -cre, -mīsi, -missum; **be away**, absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.

B.

back, re- *in comp.*, as: **take back**, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **go back**, redeō, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -itum; **hold back**, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
bad, malus, -a, -um. [*n. pl.*]
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum,
band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pūgna, -ae, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum;
bear against, inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum. See, also, bring.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because of, ob, propter.
become, fiō, fierī, factus sum.

before, ante, *prep. with acc.* ;
ante, *adv.* ; antequam, *conj.*

began, coepī, coepisse (*no present*).

beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*

behalf (*in behalf of*), prō
(*with abl.*).

Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, *m.*

believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī,
crēditum.

Bellovacī, Bellovacī, -ōrum, *m.*

between, inter (*with acc.*).

Bibracte, Bibracte, -is, *n.*

blind, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, ten-
tum.

birth, nātus, -ūs, *m.* ; **of high**
birth, nōbilis, -e.

black, niger, -gra, -grum.

blame, culpō, *l.*

body, corpus, -oris, *n.*

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

born (**be**), nāscor, nāscī, nātus
sum.

bound, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī,
-tentum.

boy, puer, -ī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*

bring, portō, *l.*, ferō, ferre, tulī,
lātum ; **bring together**, cōn-
fero, -ferre, contulī, collātum ;
bring out, efferō, efferre, ex-
tulī, ēlātum.

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*

Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

but, sed, autem ; **but that**,
quā.

C.

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*

call, vocō, *l.*, appellō, *l.* ; **call**
together, convocō, *l.*

camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

can, possum, posse, potuī.

captive, captivus, -ī, *m.*

capture, capiō, capere, cēpī,
captum. *See also take.*

care (**take**), cūrō, *l.*

carry, portō, *l.* (*see, also, bring*
and bear) ; **carry before**, prae-
ferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātum.

cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*

Casticus, Casticus, -ī, *m.*

cause, causa, -ae, *f.* ; cūrō, *l.*

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.* ; equi-
tās, -um, (*pl. of eques*), *m.*

cavalry-man, eques, -itis, *m.*

celebrated, clārus, -a, -um.

censure, culpō, *l.*

centurion, centuriō, -onis, *m.*

certain, certus, -a, -um ; **a cer-**
tain (*indefinite*), quidam.

change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

character, nātūra, -ae, *f.*

check, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī,
-hibitum.

cheerfully, libenter.

chief, princeps, -ipis, *m.* ; **com-**
mander-in-chief, imperātor,
-ōris, *m.*

children, liberī, -ōrum, *m.*

choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*

city, urbs, urbis, *f.*

cohort, cohors, -tis, *f.* [āctum.

collect, cōgō, cōgere, cōgēī, co-

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum ;

come together , conveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum.	dare , audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, (<i>semi-dep.</i>).
command , imperium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	daughter , filia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
command , iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum; imperō, 1; praesum, -esse, -ful, -futūrus; place in command , praepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum. [<i>tor, -ōris, m.</i>]	day , diēs, -ēī, <i>m.</i>
commander-in-chief , imperā-companion, comes, -itis, <i>c.</i>	dear , cārus, -a, -um.
company , comitēs, comitum.	decide , cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
conceal , cēlō, 1.	deck , ōrnō, 1.
conference , colloquium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	deep , altus, -a, -um.
confidence , fidēs, -eī, <i>f.</i>	deeply (<i>i.e.</i> seriously), gravi-ter.
confusion (throw into), per-turbō, 1.	defeat , superō, 1, vincō, -ere, vicī, victum.
conquer , superō, 1; vincō, vin-cere, vicī, victum.	defend , dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -fēn-sum; in defence of , prō, <i>prep. with abl.</i>
conqueror , victor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>	deliberate , dēliberō, 1.
consider , dēliberō, 1.	dellight , dēlectō, 1.
consul , cōsul, -ulis, <i>m.</i>	demand , pōstulō, 1.
consult , dēliberō, 1.	demonstrate , dēmōnstrō, 1.
contend , contendō, -ere, con-tendī, contentum.	departure , profectiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>
Corinth , Corinthus, -ī, <i>f.</i>	depth , altitūdō, -inis, <i>f.</i>
Cornelia , Cornēlia, -ae, <i>f.</i>	desert , relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum. [<i>-ūtum.</i>]
council , concilium, -ī, <i>n.</i>	determine , cōstituō, -ēre, -uī, difficult, difficilis, -e.
country , terra, -ae, <i>f.</i> ; native country , patria, -ae, <i>f.</i> ; country , as distinguished from city, rūis, rūris, <i>n.</i>	diligence , dīligentia, -ae, <i>f.</i>
cross , trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.	dismiss , dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -misum. [<i>-um.</i>]
crown , corōna, -ae, <i>f.</i>	distant (most), extrēmus, -a, distant (be), absum, -esse, āfui, āf tūrus.
culture , hūmānitās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>	disturb greatly , perturbō, 1.
custom , mōs, mōris, <i>m.</i>	divide , dividō, -ere, -visī, -visum.
	Divitiacus , Divitiacus, -ī, <i>m.</i>
	do , faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
	door , porta, -ae, <i>f.</i>
	doubt , dubitō, 1; there is no doubt , nōn dubium est.
	doubtful , dubius, -a, -um.
	dove , columba, -ae, <i>f.</i>

D.

dally, (*adv.*) cottīdiē, (*adj.*) cottīdiānus, -a, -um.
danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*

draw up, cōstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum;
drive back, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m*.
 dwell in, incolō, -ere, -coluī, -cultum.

E.

eager, ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagle, aquila, -ae, *f*.
early, mātūrē, *adv*.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, vescor, -ī, *no perf*.
eighty, octōgintā.
eminent, clārus, -a, -um.
encamp, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
encourage, animum (animōs) cōfirmō, *l*.
end, finis, -is, *m*.
endeavor, cōnor, *l*, *dep*.
endure, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
enemy, hostis, -is, *m*.; inimīcus, -ī, *m*.
engage (in battle), committō, -ere, -misi, -missum, (proelium).
enjoy, fruor, fruī, fruitus *and* fructus sum.
enough, satis.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.
equal, pār, paris.
escort, praesidium, -ī, *n*.
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem.

every (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque; (**day**), cottīdiē.
exhort, hortor, *l*, *dep*.
expect, exspectō, *l*.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, *m*.
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
extreme, māximus, -a, -um; extrēmus, -a, -um.

F.

fable, fābula, -ae, *f*.
fall, dēsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus.
faith, fidēs, -ei, *f*.
faithful, fidus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum;
fall upon, accidō, -ere, -cidī;
fall into, **in with**, **upon**, incidō, -ere, -cidī.
famous, nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.
farther, longius, (*adv*).
farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
father, pater, patris, *m*.
favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautum.
favorable, secundus, -a, -um.
fear, timor, -ōris, *m*.; timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m*.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fight, pūgnō, *l*.
fill, compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.
find out, reperio, -īre, repperī, repertum.
finish, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fec-tum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m*.

first, *prīmus*, -a, -um.
five, *quīnque*.
flee, *fugiō*, *fugere*, *fūgī*.
flight, *fuga*, -ae, *f.* [sum.
follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus*
following (*of time*), *posterus*,
 -a, -um.
fond of (*be*), *amō*, *l.*
food, *frūmentum*, -i, *n.*
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, *m.*
foot-soldier, *pedes*, -itis, *m.*
for, *prō* (*with abl.*), *prep.*; *nam*,
conj.
force, *vīs*, *vīs*, *vī*, *vim*; *pl.* *vīrēs*,
virium, *f.*
forced (*march*), *māximus*, -a,
 -um.
forces (*military*), *cōpia*, -arum,
f.
forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*
fortification, *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
fortified, *mūnitus*, -a, -um,
 (*perf. part. of mūniō*).
fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.
fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, *f.*
forty, *quadrāgintā*.
four, *quattuor*.
fourth, *quārtus*, -a, -um.
free, *liber*, -era, -erum; *set free*,
liberō, *l.*
friend, *amicus*, -ī, *m.*
friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, *f.*
frighten, *terreō*, *2.*
from, *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (*all with abl.*).
furthest. *See farthest.*
fury, *impetus*, -ūs, *m.*

G.

Galba, *Galba*, -ae, *m.*
Gallie, *Gallicus*, -a, -um.

garden, *hortus*, -ī, *m.*
garland, *corōna*, -ae, *f.*
gate, *porta*, -ae, *f.*
gather, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum*; *colligō*, -ere, *-lēgī*, *-lēctum*.
Gaul (*the country*), *Gallia*, -ae, *f.*; (*an inhabitant of that country*), *Gallus*, -ī, *m.*
gay, *laetus*, -a, -um.
general, *imperātor*, -ōris, *m.*
Geneva, *Genāva*, -ae, *f.*
German, *Germānus*, -a, -um, (*as subst.*, *Germānus*, -ī, *m.*).
get possession of, *potior*, -īri, -ītus sum.
gift, *dōnum*, -ī, *n.*
girl, *puella*, -ae, *f.*
give, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datum*.
give up, *trādō*, -ere, *-didī*, *-ditum*.
glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.
gladly, *libenter*.
go, *eō*, *ire*, *ī* (*ivī*), *itum*; *go out or away*, *exeō*; *go back*, *redeō*; *go across*, *trānseō*; *go away*, *abeō*; *go out*, *ēgre-dior*, -ī, -gressus sum; *go forth*, *prōgredior*, -ī, -gressus sum.
good, *bonus*, -a, -um.
grain, *frūmentum*, -ī, *n.*
great, *māgnus*, -a, -um; *so great*, *tantus*, -a, -um; *how great*, *quantus*, -a, -um.
greater, *māior*, *māius*, *gen. māiōris*.
Greece, *Graecia*, -ae, *f.*
Greek (*adj.*), *Graecus*, -a, -um; (*subst.*) *Graecus*, -ī, *m.*
grief, *dolor*, -ōris, *m.*
grieve, *be grieved*, *doleō*, *2.*
guard, *custōs*, -ōdis, *c.*; *praesidi-um*, -ī, *n.*

H.

halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.* [-ditum].
hand over, trādō, -ere, -didi.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
harm, noceō, 2.
happen, accidō, -ere, accidi.
hasten, contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum; properō, 1.
have, habeo, 2.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*
hear, audiō, 4.
heavy, gravis, -e.
height, altitūdō, -inis, *f.*
help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*; iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.
Helvetian, Helvētius, -ī, *m.*
her, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).
herself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a, -um, (*superl. summus*); of high birth, nōbilis, -e.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
himself, (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.
hinder, prohibeo, 2; impediō, 4.
his, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*); eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).
hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum; hold together, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum; hold back, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum; hold (in possession), obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; at home, domī.

Homer, Homērus, -ī, *m.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *c.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how great, quantus, -a, -um.
how many, quot (*indecl.*).
huge, ingēns, -entis.
hundred, centum.
hurl, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, properō, 1.

I.

I, egō, meī, mihi, mē, mē.
if, sī; **if not**, nisi.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
immediately, statim.
impede, impediō, 4.
in, in (*with abl.*).
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
induce, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
infantry (*adj. = of infantry*), pedester, -tris, -tre.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*; grātia, -ae, *f.*; addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
inform, certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*
injure, noceō, 2.
inquire (*about*), quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum.

intend, est in animō.

into, in (*with acc.*).

island, insula, -ae, *f.*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

its, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*);
eius (*gen. of is, not reflexive*).

itself (*reflexive*), suī, sibi, sē, sē;
(*intensive*), ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

J.

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*

judge, iūdex, -icis, *m.*

Julia, Iūlia, -ae, *f.*

Jura, Iūra, -ae, *m.*

just, iustus, -a, -um.

K.

keep, contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

keep from, prohibeō, 2.

kill, occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum;
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.

kind, genus, -eris, *n.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

knight, eques, -itis, *m.*

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.

L.

Lablenus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*

labor, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.

lack, inopia, -ae, *f.*

land, terra, -ae, *f.*

language, lingua, -ae, *f.* [-a, -um.

large, māgnus, -a, -um; multus,

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*; iūs, iūris, *n.*

lay waste, vāstō, 1.

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum;

lead away, abdūcō, dēdūcō;

lead out, edūcō; **lead on**,
addūcō. [-gnitum.

learn, cōgnōscō, -ere, -gnōvī,

leader, dux, ducis, *m.* [tum.

leave, relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lic-

left (*i.e. left hand, etc.*), sinister,
-tra, -trum; **left over** (*re-*
maining), reliquus, -a, -um.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

length, longitūdō, -inis, *f.*

lest, nē.

letter, epistula, -ae, *f.*

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*

light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*

like, similis, -e; *as verb*, amō, 1.

line (*of troops in motion*),
āgmen, -inis, *n.* (*of battle*);
aciēs, -ēī, *f.*

live (*i.e. live in, dwell*), incolō,
-ere, -uī, -cultum; **live** (*i.e. be*
alive), vivō, -ere, vixī, victum.

long, longus, -a, -um; **a long**
time, diū (*adv.*).

lose, amittō, -ere, -misi, -missum.

love, amō, 1.

low, inferus, -a, -um.

M.

made (*be*), fiō, fierī, factus sum.

magistracy, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

magnitude, māgnitūdō, -inis, *f.*

maiden, virgō, -inis, *f.*

make, faciō, facere, fecī, factum.

man, homō, -inis, *c.* (*a human*
being); vir, -ī, *m.* (*an adult*
human male).

maniple, manipulus, -ī, *m.*

manners, *mōrēs*, -um, *m.*, (*pl. of mōs*).
many, *multī*, -ae, -a, (*pl. of multus*).
march, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*; **to march**, *iter facere*.
Marcus, *Mārcus*, -ī, *m.*
marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, *f.*
Massilia, *Massilia*, -ae, *f.*
master (of servants, etc.), *dominus*, -ī, *m.*; (**of pupils, etc.**), *magister*, -trī, *m.*
meeting, *concilium*, -ī, *n.*
memory, *memoria*, -ae, *f.*
merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, *m.*
messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, *m.*
middle of, *medius*, -a, -um.
military, *militāris*, -e; **military service**, *militia*, -ae, *f.*; **military forces**, *cōpia*, -ārum, *f.*
mind, *mēns*, *mentis*, *f.*; *animus*, -ī, *m.*
mistress, *domina*, -ae, *f.*
money, *pecūnia*, -ae, *f.*
month, *mēnsis*, -is, *m.*
mother, *māter*, -tris, *f.*
mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *m.*
move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*.
much, *multus*, -a, -um.
multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, *f.*
my, *meus*, -a, -um.

N.

name, *nōmen*, -inis, *n.* [*f. pl.*].
narrowness, *angustiae*, -ārum,
nation, *nātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
native country, *patria*, -ae, *f.*
nature, *nātūra*, -ae, *f.*
near, *ad* (*with acc.*).

necessary, *necesse*, *indecl. adj.*
neighbor, *finitimus*, -ī, *m.*
neighboring, *finitimus*, -a, -um.
neither . . . nor, *neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)*.
nevertheless, *tamen*.
new, *novus*, -a, -um.
next, *proximus*, -a, -um.
night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*
no, no one, *nullus*, -a, -um.
noble, *nōbilis*, -e.
nobody, *nēmō*, -inis, *m.*, (*not used in gen. and abl.*).
not, *nōn*, *nōnne* (*in questions*), *nē* (*in prohibitions, wishes, and final clauses*); **and not**, *neque (nec)*; **not even**, *nē . . . quidem*.
nothing, *nihil*, *n.*, (*indecl.*).
notice, *animadvertō*, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
notwithstanding, *tamen*.
now, *nunc*, *iam*.
number, *numerus*, -ī, *m.*

O.

oath, *iūsiurandum*, *iūrisiurandī*, *n.*
obey, *pāreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus.
of, de (*with abl.*).
often, *saepe*.
old, *antiquus*, -a, -um; **old man**, *senex*, *senis*, *m.*; **older**, *māior* *nātū*.
one, *ūnus*, -a, -um; **one . . . another**, *alius . . . alius*; **one . . . the other (of two)**, *alter . . . alter*.
open, *apertus*, -a, -um.
oration, *orātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*

order, *ōrdō*, -inis, *m.*, (**rank**);
imperium, -ī, *n.*, (**command**);
to order, imperō, 1; iubeō,
-ēre, iūssī, iūssum.

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, -īgis, *m.*

other, alius, -a, -ud; **other of**
two, alter, -era, -erum.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

over (be), praesum, -esse, -fuī,
-futūrus.

overcome, superō, 1.

owe, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

P.

pace, passus, -ūs, *m.*

pain, dolor, -ōris, *m.*; **be pained**,
doleō, 2.

parent, parēns, parentis, *c.*

parley, colloquium, -ī, *n.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, populus, -ī, *m.*

perceive, cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī,
-spectum.

perform, fungor, -ī, fūctus
sum.

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī,
-suāsum.

pick (from), dēligō, -ere, -lēgī,
-lēctum.

picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*

pitch (a camp), pōnō, -ere,
posuī, positum.

place, locus, -ī, *m.*, (*pl.*, loca,
-ōrum, *n.*); pōnō, -ere, posuī,
positum; **place over or in**
command, praepōnō, -ere,
-posuī, -positum; **to that**
place, eō.

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um.

please, dēlectō, 1.

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, *f.*

plenty, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

poem, carmen, -inis, *n.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

position, locus, -ī, *m.*; **take**
a position, cōnsidō, -ere,
-sēdī, -sessum; cōnsistō, -ere,
-stitī.

possession (get), potior, -īrī,
-ītus sum.

power, potestās, -ātis, *f.*, impe-
rium, -ī, *n.*; **royal power**,
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

powerful, potēns, -entis.

praise, laudō, 1.

prefer, mālō, mālle, mālui; prae-
ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.

prepare, parō, 1. [affutūrus.

present (be), adsum, -esse, affuī.

produce, efferō, -ferre, extulī,
ēlātum.

Procillus, Procillus, -ī, *m.*

procure, parō, 1.

profitable (be), prōsum, prō-
desse, prōfuī, -futūrus. [sum.

promise, polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus

proper, idōneus, -a, -um.

prosperity, rēs (rērum, etc.)
secundae.

protect, dēfendō, -ere, -dī,
-fēnsum.

protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

public, publicus, -a, -um.

pupil, discipulus, -ī, *m.*

put around, circumdō, -dare,
-dedī, -datum.

Q.

queen, *rēgina*, -ae, *f.*
quick, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.
quickly, *celeriter*.

R.

rank, *ōrdō*, -inis, *m.*
rapidity, *celeritās*, -ātis, *f.*
read, *legō*, -ēre, *lēgi*, *lēctum*.
ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.
reason, *causa*, -ae, *f.*
region, *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
remain, *maneō*, -ēre, *mānsī*, *mānsūrus*; *remaneō*, -ēre, -*mānsī*, -*mānsūrus*; *supersum*, -esse, -*fuī*.
remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um.
remember, *memoriā teneō*, 2.
render, *ferō*, -ferre, *tuli*, *lātum*.
reply, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*. [spōnsūm].
reply, *respondeō*, -ēre, -*dī*, *re-report*, *nūntiō*, 1; *renūntiō*, 1.
republic, *rēs pūblica*.
repulse, *pellō*, -ere, *pepulī*, *pulsum*.
resist, *resistō*, -ere, -*stitī*, *no supine*.
rest, *quies*, -ētis, *f.*; **the rest of**, *reliquus*, -a, -um.
restrain, *contineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -tentum.
retain, *retineō*, -ēre, -*tinuī*, -tentum.
retiré. *See retreat*.
retreat, *recipiō*, -ere, -*cēpī*, -*ceptum*, *with the refl. pronouns* *mē*, *sē*, *etc.*
return, *revertor*, -ī, *reversus sum*; *redeō*, -īre, -*ii*, -*itum*.
Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī, *m.*

Rhone, *Rhodanus*, -ī, *m.*
right, *iūs*, *iūris*, *n.*; **right** (*hand, etc.*), *dexter*, -tra, -trum.
ripe, *mātūrus*, -a, -um.
river, *flūmen*, -inis, *n.*
Roman, (*adj.*), *Rōmānus*, -a, -um; (*subst.*), *Rōmānus*, -ī, *m.*
Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, *f.*
rose, *rosa*, -ae, *f.*
route, *iter*, *itineris*, *n.*
row, *ōrdō*, -inis.
royal power, *rēgnum*, -ī, *n.*
run, *currō*, *currere*, *cucurrī*, *cursum*.

S.

safe, *tūtus*, -a, -um.
safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, *f.*
sallor, *nauta*, -ae, *m.*
same, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*.
say, *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxī*, *dictum*.
scout, *explōrātor*, -ōris, *m.*
sea, *mare*, -is, *n.*
seashore, *lītus*, -oris, *n.*
second, *secundus*, -a, -um.
see, *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *visum*; *cōnspiciō*, -ere, -*spexī*, -*spectum*.
seek, *petō*, -ere, *petīvī*, *petitum*.
seize, *occupō*, 1; *capiō*, -ere, -*cēpī*, *captum*.
select, *dēligō*, -ere, -*lēgī*, -*lēctum*.
self, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*.
senate, *senātus*, -ūs, *m.*
send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missum*,
send away, *dimitto*, -ere, -*mīsī*, -*missum*.
separate, *dividō*, -ere, -*vīsī*, -*vīsum*.
Sequanian, *Sēquanus*, -ī, *m.*
servant, *servus*, -ī, *m.*; *serva*, -ae, *f.*
set free, *liberō*, 1.

set out , proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum.	something , aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.
setting , occāsus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .	son , fīlius, -ī, <i>m</i> .
severe , ācer, ācris, ācre; <i>gravis</i> , -e.	song , carmen, -inis, <i>n</i> .
sharp , ācer, ācris, ācre.	soul , animus, -ī, <i>m</i> .
sharply , ācritēr.	spare , parcō, -ere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus (parcītūrus).
shield , scūtum, -ī, <i>n</i> .	speech , ōrātiō, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
ship , nāvis, -is, <i>f</i> .	speed , celeritās, -tātis, <i>f</i> .
shore , litus, -oris, <i>n</i> .	spend the winter , hiemō, 1.
short , brevis, -e.	spirit , animus, -ī, <i>m</i> . [tum.
shout , clāmer, -ōris, <i>m</i> .	spy , cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spec-
show , dēmōnstrō, 1.	stand , stō, stāre, stetī, statum;
sides (on all sides) , undique (<i>adv.</i>).	stand one's ground , take a
sign , signum, -ī, <i>n</i> .	stand , cōsistō, -ere, -stitī.
similar , similis, -e.	standard , signum, -ī, <i>n</i> .
since , cum.	state , cīvitas, -ātis, <i>f</i> .
sister , soror, -ōris, <i>f</i> .	still (adv.) , tamen.
six , sex.	stone , lapis, -idis, <i>m</i> .
sixth , sextus, -a, -um.	storm , tempestās, -ātis, <i>f</i> .; op-
sixty , sexāgintā.	pūgnō , 1; take by storm ,
size , māgnitūdō, -inis, <i>f</i> .	expūgnō , 1.
skill , ars, artis, <i>f</i> .	story , fābula, -ae, <i>f</i> .
skillful , peritus, -a, -um.	strength , vīs, vis, vī, vim; <i>pl.</i>
slaughter , caedēs, -is, <i>f</i> .	virēs , virium, <i>f</i> .
slave , servus, -ī, <i>m</i> .; <i>serva</i> , -ae, <i>f</i> .	strengthen , cōnfirmō, 1.
slay , occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum; interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.	strive , contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum.
slender , gracilis, -e.	strong (be) , valeō, 2.
small , parvus, -a, -um.	suitable , idōneus, -a, -um.
so (of degree) , tam; so . . . as , tam . . . quam; so (of manner or consequence) , ita; so great , tantus, -a, -um.	summer , aestās, -ātis, <i>f</i> .
soldier , miles, -itis, <i>m</i> .; foot-soldier , pedes, -itis, <i>m</i> .	summon , convocō, 1.
somebody , aliquis, -qua or -quae, -quid; quisquam, quidquam.	sun , sōl, sōlis, <i>m</i> .; sunset , sōlis occāsus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
	superior (be) , superō, 1.
	supplies , commeātus, -ūs, <i>m</i> .
	surpass , superō, 1.
	surrender , dēditō, -ōnis, <i>f</i> .
	surrender (verb) , trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum. [-datum.
	surround , circumdō, -dare, -dedī,

suspicion, sūspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
swift, celer, celeris, celere; vēlōx, vēlōcis.
swiftly, vēlōciter.
swiftness, celeritās, -ātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T.

table, mēnsa, -ae, *f.*
take, occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum; **take by storm**, expūgnō, 1; **take a position**, cōnsidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī; **take back**, recipiō.
take care, cūrō, 1.
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*
tell, nārrō, 1.
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*
ten, decem (*indecl.*).
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
territory, fīnēs, -ium, *m.*, (*pl. of finis*); ager, -grī, *m.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
than, quam.
that, ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; **that (of yours)**, iste, ista, istud; **that, so that, in order that**, ut; **that not**, nē; **that, but that**, quā.
their, suus, -a, -um, (*reflexive*), eōrum, eārum, (*gen. pl. of is, not reflexive*).
there, ibī.
thing, rēs, rei, *f.*
think, putō, 1; arbitror, 1, *dep.*; existimō, 1; cōgitō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
this, hic, haec, hōc.

thither, eō.
thou, tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tū, tē.
thousand, mille; *pl.*, millia.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, per (*with acc.*).
throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; **throw together**, coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum; **throw into confusion**, perturbō, 1.
thy, tuus, -a, -um.
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, *m.*
to, ad, in, (*with acc.*).
together, *con in composition*, as **call together**, convocō, 1; **come together**, conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum; **throw together**, coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
toil, labor, -ōris, *m.*; labōrō, 1.
tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*
top of, summus, -a, -um.
towards, ad (*with acc.*).
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f.*
true, vērus, -a, -um. [tum.
trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēdi-
try, cōnor, 1, *dep.*
turret, turris, -is, *f.*
twentyleth, vicēsimus, -a, -um.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duō, -ae, -ō.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U.

under, sub (*with abl. except after verbs of motion; then with acc.*).

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

unfavorable, adversus, -a, -um ; aliēnus, -a, -um.

unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.

unless, nisi.

unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

urge, hortor, 1, *dep.*

urge on, incitō, 1.

use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum.

utmost, māximus, -a, -um ; summus, -a, -um.

V.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

vast, ingēns, -entis.

very, to be expressed by the superl. or sometimes by per- in composition.

victor, victor, -ōris, *m.*

village, vicus, -i, *m.*

violence, vīs, vīs, *f.*

violent, ācer, -cris, -cre.

violently, ācriter (*adv.*).

Virgil, Vergilius, -i, *m.*

virgin, virgō, -inis, *f.*

virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*

voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W.

wage war, bellum gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum ; **wage offensive war**, bellum inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum.

wait for, expectō, 1.

wall, mūrus, -i, *m.*

want, inopia, -ae, *f.*

war, bellum, -i, *n.*

warn, moneō, 2.

war-vessel, nāvis longa.

waste (lay waste), vāstō, 1.

watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*

water, aqua, -ae, *f.*

weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*

weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.

weather, tempestās, -ātis, *f.*

welcome, grātus, -a, -um.

welfare, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

what (rel.), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

when, cum.

where, ubi.

whether, num.

which (rel.), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

white, albus, -a, -um.

who (rel.), quī, quae, quod ; (*interrog.*), quis, quae, quid.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

why ? cūr.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

width, lātitudō, -inis, *f.*

wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*

will, voluntās, -ātis, *f.*

willing (be), volō, velle, voluī.

wind, ventus, -i, *m.*

wing, āla, -ae, *f.* ; **wing of an army**, cornū, -ūs, *n.*

winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.* ; **winter quarters**, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.* ; **pass the winter**, hiemō, 1.

wish, volō, velle, voluī ; **wish more or rather**, mālō, mälle, mālui. [*(with acc.)*].

with, cum (*with abl.*), apud. **withdraw (transitive)**, dēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum ; (*intrans.*), discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum ; recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum

(<i>reflexive with</i> <i>mē, tē, sē, etc.</i>).	write , <i>scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.</i>
withstand , <i>sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.</i>	wrong , <i>iniūria, -ae, f.</i>
woman , <i>mulier, -eris, f.; fēmina, -ae, f.</i>	Y.
wonder at , <i>mīror, 1, dep.</i>	year , <i>annus, -ī, m.</i>
woods , <i>silva, -ae, f.</i>	you , <i>tū (sing.), vōs (pl.).</i>
work , <i>opus, operis, n.; labōrō, 1.</i>	your , <i>vester, -tra, -trum, (belong- to more than one); tuus, -a, -um, (belonging to one).</i>
worthy , <i>dignus, -a, -um.</i>	youth (young person) , <i>adulēs- cēns, -entis, m.; iuvenis, -is, m.</i>
wound , <i>vulnus, -eris, n.; vul- nerō, 1.</i>	
wretched , <i>miser, -era, -erum.</i>	

INDEX.

[References are to sections.]

- ablative**, of instrument or means, 70; of manner, 77; of accompaniment, 84; of time, 90; of agent, 102; of cause, 109; of specification, 116; of quality, 122; with comparatives for *quam*, 129; of degree of difference, 142; with *ulor*, *fruror*, etc., 254; absolute, 363, 364, 365.
- accent**, 7.
- accompaniment**, abl. with *cum*, 84.
- accusative**, as direct object, 14; of duration and extent, 182; subject of infinitive, 231.
- adjectives**, agreement of, 39; declension, 37, 46, 98, 105, 112; (nine irregular), 167, 168.
- adverbs**, formation, 145; comparison, 146.
- agent**, abl. with *à* or *ab*, 102; ending *-tor*, 295; dative of, 390.
- agreement**, of verb, 22; of predicate noun, 26; of appositive, 28; of adjective, 39; of relative, 215; of participle, 249.
- alphabet**, 1.
- antecedent**, 214.
- appositive**, 27.
- Caesar**, words in, see preface; life by Eutropius, 399.
- cases**, 8, 1.
- causal clauses** with *cum*, 352.
- cause**, abl. of, 109.
- commands**, 329; in indirect discourse, 358.
- comparative**, with *quam* or abl., 128, 129.
- comparison**, of adjectives (regular), 126, 132; (irregular), 133, 138, 139, 140; of adverbs, 146.
- composition**, see formation.
- concessive clauses** with *cum*, 352.
- conditions**, simple, 335, 336; less vivid future, 338; contrary to fact, 340.
- conjugation**, 8, 2; first periphrastic, 386; second periphrastic, 388; paradigms of conjugation, 417-427.
- consecutive clauses**, 318.
- consonants**, 3; sounds of, 4.
- cum**, prep. with abl., 77, 84; enclitic, 192, 4.
- cum**, conjunction, temporal with indicative, 346; historical with subjunctive, 348; causal and concessive, 352.
- dative**, indirect object, 33; of possessor, 49; with adjectives, 155; with compound verbs, 268; with intransitives, 273; two datives, 288; with gerundive, 390.
- declension**, 8, 1; first, 10 to 19; second, 31, 36, 42; stem of, 31, 2, 3; 36, 1; third, 52, 55, 61, 73, 80, 87; fourth, 149; fifth, 163; of adjectives, 37, 46, 98, 105, 112; (nine irregular), 167, 168; of comparatives, 127; of numerals, 179, 180, 187; of pronouns (personal), 192, (reflexive) 192, (pos-

- sessive) 197, (demonstrative) 205, 208, (relative) 213, (interrogative) 220, (indefinite) 226; of participles, 248.
deponent verbs, 252; certain dependents with ablative, 254.
derivation, see **formation**.
difference, degree of, 142.
diphthongs, 4.
domus, in expressions of place, 240.
duration of time, acc., 182.

ē, used before consonants, 65, note.
enclitic, 7, 4.
eō, 285, 427.
Eutropius, life of Caesar, 399.
extent of space, acc., 182.

ferō, 276, 426.
final clauses, 311; see also 322, 323.
fiō, 285, 427.
fore, 387.
formation, of adverbs, 145; of compounds, 292; of nouns, 295, 297, 299; of adjectives, 300; of verbs, 301; of fut. inf. pass., 378, note, 387.
frigor, with ablative, 254.
fungor, with ablative, 254.

gender, 7; of first decl., 10, 8; of second decl., 31, 5; 36, 2; 42, 4; of third decl., 93; of fourth decl., 149, 4; of fifth decl., 163, 4.
genitive, limiting nouns, 17; participative, 135.
gerund, 368, 371.
gerundive, 368, 371; in second periphrastic conjugation, 368.

hic, 205, 1, 4.

ille, 205, 3, 4.
imperative constructions, 328, 329.
impersonal passive, 273.
indirect discourse, 230, 231, 232, 234, 358, 359.
indirect questions, 306.

infinitive, in indirect discourse, 230, 232, 234; as subject or predicate noun, 260; to complete meaning of verbs, 262; formation of future passive, 378, note, 387.
inflection, 8. See **conjugation** and **declension**.
instrument, ablative of, 70.
intensive (*ipse*), 208, 2.
is, 208, 1.
iste, 205, 2.

liquids, 3.
locative-case, 8, 1; 239.

māiō, 425.
manner, ablative, 77.
means, ablative, 70.
mihi, declension and use, 180, 2.
mutes, 3.

nē, in final clauses, 311; after verbs of fearing, 322; in imperative constructions, 329, 4; in wishes, 331.
-ne, enclitic, 62.
negative, in final clauses, 311; in consecutive clauses, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322; in imperative clauses, 329; in wishes, 331.
Nepos, vocabulary, see *preface*.
nōli, **nōlite**, in negative commands, 329, 2.
nōliō, 425.
nōne, 62.
num, 62.
number, 9.
numerals, cardinal, 178; declension of, 179, 180; ordinal, 187.

object, direct, 14; indirect, 33.
obligation, expressed by gerundive, 368, 390.
ōrātiō obliqua, see **indirect discourse**.

participles, 248, 249; of dependents, 252; declension of, 248; abl. absolute, 363, 364, 365; future expressing purpose, 381.
partitive genitive, 135.
parts of speech, 6.

- passive**, of intransitive verbs, 273.
periphrastic conjugations, 387, 388.
permission, 329.
place, how expressed, 239; with names of towns, 240; *domus* and *rūs*, 240.
plūs, defective, 139, note.
possum, 423.
potior, with abl., 254.
predicate noun, 25; infinitive as predicate noun, 260.
principal parts, 56, note.
pronouns, personal, 192; reflexive, 192, 208, 2; possessive, 197; demonstrative, 205, 208; relative, 213 (agreement of, 215; in final clauses, 311; in consecutive clauses, 318); interrogative, 220; indefinite, 226.
pronunciation, Roman, 4; English, 5.
purpose, clauses of, 311 (see also 322, 323); ways of expressing, 378, 379, 380, 381.
quality, ablative of, 122.
questions, 62; indirect, 306; in indirect discourse, 358.
qui and **quis** indefinite after *si*, etc., 226.
quin, 323.
relative, in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318. See under **pronoun**.
requests, 329.
result, clauses of, 318.
rūs, in expressions of place, 240.
sequence of tenses, 304.
specification, abl. of, 116.
spirants, 3.
stem, 10, 8; of first decl., 10, 4; of second decl., 31, 2, 36, 1; of third decl., 52, 1; of fourth decl., 149, 1; of fifth decl., 163; of present, 56, 1; of first conj., 56, 2; of second conj., 150, 2; of perfect, 74, 1.
subject, of finite verb, 13; of infinitive, 231; infinitive as subject, 260.
subjunctive, sequence of tenses of, 304, 359; in indirect questions, 306; in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322; with *quā*, 323; in less vivid future conditions, 338; in conditions contrary to fact, 340; with *cum*, 348, 352; in indirect discourse, 358, 359.
subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 358.
sum, conjugation, 422.
supine, in *-um*, 378; in *-u*, 383.
syllables, 4; quantity of, 6.
tenses, 8, 2; of infinitive in indirect discourse, 234; of participles, 249; sequence of, in subjunctive, 304; in indirect discourse, 359.
termination, 10, 5.
time, when, abl., 90; duration, acc., 182.
ut, in final clauses, 311; in clauses of result, 318; after verbs of fearing, 322.
utinam, 330.
utor, with abl., 254.
vescor, with abl., 254.
vocabulary, composition of, see preface.
volō, 425.
vowels, 2; pronunciation of, 4; quantity of, 5.
wishes, 331.

THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,

Leland Stanford Junior University,

AND

HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,

Columbia College.

This Series contains the Latin authors usually read in American schools and colleges, and also others well adapted to class-room use, but not heretofore published in suitable editions. The several volumes are prepared by special editors, who aim to revise the text carefully and to edit it in the most serviceable manner. Where there are German editions of unusual merit, representing years of special study under the most favorable circumstances, these are used, with the consent of the foreign editor, as a basis for the American edition. In this way it is possible to bring out text-books of the highest excellence in a comparatively short period of time.

The editions are of two kinds, conforming to the different methods of studying Latin in our best institutions. Some contain in the introductions and commentary such a careful and minute treatment of the author's life, language, and style as to afford the means for a thorough appreciation of the author and his place in Latin literature. Others aim merely to assist the student to a good reading knowledge of the author, and have only the text and brief explanatory notes at the bottom of each page. The latter are particularly acceptable for sight reading, and for rapid reading after the minute study of an author or period in one of the fuller editions. For instance, after a class has read a play or two of Plautus and Terence carefully, with special reference to the peculiarities of style, language, metres, the methods of presenting a play, and the like, these editions will be admirably suited for the rapid reading of other plays.

The Series also contains various supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort is made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

The following volumes are now ready or in preparation :—

- CAESAR, Gallic War, Books I-V.** By HAROLD W. JOHNSTON, Ph.D., Professor in the Indiana University.
- CATULLUS, Selections,** based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.
- CICERO, Select Oration.** By B. L. D'OOGHE, A.M., Professor in the State Normal School, Ypsilanti, Mich.
- CICERO, De Senectute et de Amicitia.** By CHARLES F. BENNETT, A.M., Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*
- CICERO, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II.** By Professor PECK.
- CICERO, De Oratore, Book I,** based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College. *Ready.*
- CICERO, Select Letters,** based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.
- EUTROPIUS, Selections.** *Ready.*
- GELLIUS, Selections.** By Professor PECK.
- HORACE, Odes and Epodes.** By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Ready.*
- HORACE, Satires and Epistles,** based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*
- LIVY, Books XXI and XXII,** based upon the edition of Wölfflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*
- LIVY, Book I,** for rapid reading. By Professor LORD. *Ready.*
- LUCRETIVS, De Rerum Natura, Book III.** By W. A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California.
- MARTIAL, Selections.** By CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D., Professor in Barnard College.
- NEPOS, for rapid reading.** By ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California. *Ready.*
- NEPOS, Selections.** By J. C. JONES, A.M., Professor in the University of Missouri.
- OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses,** based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By B. L. WIGGINS, A.M., Professor in the University of the South.

- OVID, Selections, for rapid reading.** By A. L. BONDURANT, A.M.
Professor in the University of Mississippi.
- PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis, based upon the edition of Bücheler.**
By W. E. WATERS, Ph.D., President of Wells College.
- PLAUTUS, Captivi, for rapid reading.** By GROVE E. BARBER, A.M.,
Professor in the University of Nebraska.
- PLAUTUS, Menaechni, based upon the edition of Brix.** By HAROLD
N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University.
Ready.
- PLINY, Select Letters, for rapid reading.** By SAMUEL BALL PLAT-
NER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- QUINTILIAN, Book X and Selections from Book XII, based upon**
the edition of Krüger. By CARL W. BELSER, Ph.D., Professor in
the University of Colorado.
- SALLUST, Catiline, based upon the edition of Schmalz.** By CHARLES
G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the
City of New York. *Ready.*
- SENECA, Select Letters.** By E. C. WINSLOW, A.M.
- TACITUS, Annals, Book I and Selections from Book II, based upon**
the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen. By E. M. HYDE, Ph.D., Pro-
fessor in Lehigh University.
- TACITUS, Agricola and Germania, based upon the editions of Schweil-
zer-Sidler and Dräger.** By A. G. HOPKINS, Ph.D., Professor in
Hamilton College. *Ready.*
- TACITUS, Histories, Book I and Selections from Books II-V, based**
upon the edition of Wolff. By EDWARD H. SPIECKER, Ph.D., Pro-
fessor in the Johns Hopkins University.
- TERENCE, Adelphoe, for rapid reading.** By WILLIAM L. COWLES,
A.M., Professor in Amherst College. *Ready.*
- TERENCE, Phormio, based upon the edition of Dziatzko.** By HER-
BERT C. ELMER, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell Uni-
versity. *Ready.*
- TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections, based upon the edition of**
Jacoby. By HENRY F. BURTON, A.M., Professor in the University
of Rochester.
- VALERIUS MAXIMUS, Fifty Selections, for rapid reading.** By
CHARLES S. SMITH, A.M., College of New Jersey. *Ready.*

- VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, Historia Romana, Book II.** By F. E. ROCKWOOD, A.M., Professor in Bucknell University. *Ready.*
- VERGIL, Books I-VI.** By E. ANTOINETTE ELY, A.M., Clifton School, and S. FRANCES PELLETT, A.M., Binghamton High School, N.Y.
- VERGIL, The Story of Turnus from Aen. VII-XII, for rapid reading.** By MOSES SLAUGHTER, Ph.D., Professor in University of Wisconsin. *Ready.*
- VIRI ROMAE, Selections. With Prose Exercises.** By G. M. WHICHER, A.M., Packer Collegiate Institute. *Ready.*
- LATIN COMPOSITION, for college use.** By WALTER MILLER, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University. *Ready.*
- LATIN COMPOSITION, for advanced classes.** By H. R. FAIRCLOUGH, A.M., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University.
- HAND-BOOK OF LATIN SYNONYMS.** By Mr. MILLER.
- A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN.** By HIRAM TUELL, A.M., late Principal of the Milton High School, Mass., and HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Western Reserve University. *Ready.*
- EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION, for schools.** By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., formerly Principal of Chauncy-Hall School, Boston. *Ready.*
- A NEW LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.** By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M. *Ready.*
- THE PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS, a manual for the use of schools and colleges.** By HARRIET WATERS PRESTON and LOUISE DODGE. *Ready.*
- GREEK AND ROMAN MYTHOLOGY, based on the recent work of Steuding.** By KARL P. HARRINGTON, A.M., Professor in the University of North Carolina, and HERBERT C. TOLMAN, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*
- ATLAS ANTIQUUS, twelve maps of the ancient world, for schools and colleges.** By Dr. HENRY KIEPERT, M.R. Acad. Berlin. *Ready.*

Tentative arrangements have been made for other books not ready to be announced.

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO., Publishers,
110 Boylston St., Boston.

11
12
13